

# **Solution Book of Mathematic**

*Senior 2 Part I*

MELVIN CHIA

Written on 9 October 2022

# Contents

<b>12 Sequence and Series</b>	<b>5</b>
12.1 Sequence and Series . . . . .	5
12.1.1 Practice 1 . . . . .	5
12.1.2 Practice 2 . . . . .	5
12.1.3 Exercise 12.1 . . . . .	5
12.2 Arithmetic Progression . . . . .	7
12.2.1 Practice 3 . . . . .	7
12.2.2 Practice 4 . . . . .	7
12.2.3 Practice 5 . . . . .	8
12.2.4 Exercise 12.2 . . . . .	8
12.3 Geometric Progression . . . . .	14
12.3.1 Practice 6 . . . . .	14
12.3.2 Practice 7 . . . . .	15
12.3.3 Practice 8 . . . . .	15
12.3.4 Practice 9 . . . . .	16
12.3.5 Exercise 12.3 . . . . .	17
12.4 Simple Summation of Special Series . . . . .	22
12.4.1 Practice 10 . . . . .	23
12.4.2 Exercise 12.4 . . . . .	24
12.5 Revision Exercise 12 . . . . .	25
<b>13 System of Equations</b>	<b>32</b>
13.1 System of Equations with Two Variables . . . . .	32
13.1.1 Practice 1 . . . . .	32
13.1.2 Exercise 13.1 . . . . .	32
13.2 System of Equations with Three Variables . . . . .	35
13.2.1 Practice 2 . . . . .	35
13.2.2 Exercise 13.2 . . . . .	36

13.3 Revision Exercise 13 . . . . .	38
-------------------------------------	----

<b>14 Marix and Determinant</b>	<b>41</b>
---------------------------------	-----------

14.1 Matrix . . . . .	41
14.1.1 Exercise 14.1 . . . . .	42
14.2 Matrix Addition and Substraction . . . . .	42
14.2.1 Practice 1 . . . . .	43
14.2.2 Exercise 14.2 . . . . .	43
14.3 Scalar Product of Matrices . . . . .	43
14.3.1 Practice 2 . . . . .	44
14.3.2 Exercise 14.3 . . . . .	44
14.4 Multiplication of Matrices . . . . .	45
14.4.1 Practice 3 . . . . .	45
14.4.2 Exercise 14.4 . . . . .	46
14.5 Determinants . . . . .	47
14.5.1 Practice 4 . . . . .	47
14.5.2 Practice 5 . . . . .	47
14.5.3 Practice 6 . . . . .	48
14.5.4 Exercise 14.5a . . . . .	49
14.5.5 Practice 7 . . . . .	50
14.5.6 Practice 8 . . . . .	50
14.5.7 Practice 9 . . . . .	51
14.5.8 Practice 10 . . . . .	51
14.5.9 Exercise 14.5b . . . . .	51
14.6 Inverse Matrix . . . . .	55
14.6.1 Practice 11 . . . . .	55
14.6.2 Practice 12 . . . . .	56
14.6.3 Practice 13 . . . . .	57
14.6.4 Exercise 14.6 . . . . .	57
14.7 Gauss Elimination . . . . .	61
14.7.1 Practice 14 . . . . .	61
14.7.2 Practice 15 . . . . .	62
14.7.3 Exercise 14.7 . . . . .	62
14.8 Cramer's Rule . . . . .	64
14.8.1 Practice 16 . . . . .	64
14.8.2 Exercise 14.8 . . . . .	64
14.9 Revision Exercise 14 . . . . .	65

<b>15 Inequalities and Linear Programming</b>	<b>77</b>
15.1 Inequalities and its Identities . . . . .	77
15.1.1 Practice 1 . . . . .	77
15.1.2 Practice 2 . . . . .	77
15.1.3 Exercise 15.1 . . . . .	78
15.2 Linear Inequalities . . . . .	78
15.2.1 Practice 3 . . . . .	78
15.2.2 Exercise 15.2a . . . . .	79
15.2.3 Practice 4 . . . . .	80
15.2.4 Exercise 15.2b . . . . .	80
15.3 Quadratic Inequalities . . . . .	83
15.3.1 Practice 5 . . . . .	83
15.3.2 Exercise 15.3a . . . . .	83
15.3.3 Practice 6 . . . . .	84
15.3.4 Exercise 15.3b . . . . .	85
15.4 Solution of Linear Inequalities of Higher Degree . . . . .	87
15.4.1 Practice 7 . . . . .	87
15.4.2 Exercise 15.4 . . . . .	87
15.5 Fractional Inequalities . . . . .	89
15.5.1 Practice 8 . . . . .	89
15.5.2 Exercise 15.5 . . . . .	90
15.6 Inequalities containing absolute values . . . . .	91
15.6.1 Practice 9 . . . . .	91
15.6.2 Exercise 15.6 . . . . .	92
15.7 Linear Inequalities of Two Variables . . . . .	93
15.7.1 Practice 10 . . . . .	93
15.7.2 Practice 11 . . . . .	94
15.7.3 Exercise 15.7 . . . . .	94
15.8 Linear Programming . . . . .	97
15.8.1 Practice 12 . . . . .	97
15.8.2 Exercise 15.8 . . . . .	97
15.9 Revision Exercise 15 . . . . .	103
<b>16 Circle</b>	<b>113</b>
16.1 Standard Equation of a Circle . . . . .	113
16.1.1 Practice 1 . . . . .	113
16.1.2 Exercise 16.1 . . . . .	113

16.2 General Equation of a Circle . . . . .	114
16.2.1 Practice 2 . . . . .	114
16.2.2 Exercise 16.2 . . . . .	115
16.3 Problems Related to Circles . . . . .	117
16.3.1 Practice 3 . . . . .	117
16.3.2 Exercise 16.3 . . . . .	119
16.4 Revision Exercise 16 . . . . .	123

# Chapter 12

## Sequence and Series

### 12.1 Sequence and Series

#### 12.1.1 Practice 1

1. Find the first 5 terms of the sequence  $a_n = \frac{2^n}{n+1}$ .

**sol.**  $a_1 = \frac{2}{2} = 1, a_2 = \frac{4}{3}, a_3 = \frac{8}{4}, a_4 = \frac{16}{5}, a_5 = \frac{32}{6}$

2. Write the general term of the sequence 1, 8, 27, 64, ...

**sol.**  $a_n = n^3$

#### 12.1.2 Practice 2

1. Express the series  $\sum_{n=1}^{10} n^2 + 1$  in the form of numbers.

**sol.**  $\sum_{n=1}^{10} n^2 + 1$   
 $= (1^2 + 1) + (2^2 + 1) + (3^2 + 1) + (4^2 + 1)$   
 $+ (5^2 + 1) + (6^2 + 1) + (7^2 + 1)$   
 $+ (8^2 + 1) + (9^2 + 1) + (10^2 + 1)$   
 $= 2 + 5 + 10 + 17 + 26 + 37 + 50 + 65$   
 $+ 82 + 101$

2. Write the first term, last term and the number of terms of the series  $\sum_{n=1}^{10} (3^n - 2^n)$ .

**sol.** First term  $= (3^1 - 2^1) = 1$

Last term  $= (3^{10} - 2^{10}) = 59049$

Number of terms  $= 10$

3. Express the series  $2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 7 + 4 \cdot 9 + \dots + 15 \cdot 31$  in the form of  $\sum$ .

**sol.**

$$a_1 = 2 \cdot 5 = 10$$

$$a_2 = 3 \cdot 7 = 21$$

$$a_3 = 4 \cdot 9 = 36$$

$$a_4 = 5 \cdot 11 = 55$$

$\vdots$

$$a_{15} = 15 \cdot 31 = 465$$

$$\therefore 2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 7 + 4 \cdot 9 + \dots + 15 \cdot 31$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{15} a_n$$

#### 12.1.3 Exercise 12.1

1. Find the general term of the following sequences.

- (a) 5, 8, 11, 14, ...

**sol.**  $a_n = 3n + 2$

- (b) 2, 4, 8, 16, ...

**sol.**  $a_n = 2^n$

- (c)  $\frac{2}{1}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{4}{3}, \frac{5}{4}, \dots$

**sol.**  $a_n = \frac{n+1}{n}$

- (d)  $\frac{2}{5}, \frac{4}{7}, \frac{6}{9}, \frac{8}{11}, \dots$

**sol.**  $a_n = \frac{2n}{2n+1}$

2. Find the first 5 terms of the following sequences.

- (a)  $a_n = 2n + 3$

**sol.**  $a_1 = 2 \cdot 1 + 3 = 5, a_2 = 2 \cdot 2 + 3 = 7, a_3 = 2 \cdot 3 + 3 = 9, a_4 = 2 \cdot 4 + 3 = 11, a_5 = 2 \cdot 5 + 3 = 13$

- (b)  $a_n = n(n - 2)$

**sol.**  $a_1 = 1 \cdot (-1) = -1, a_2 = 2 \cdot 0 = 0, a_3 = 3 \cdot 1 = 3, a_4 = 4 \cdot 2 = 8, a_5 = 5 \cdot 3 = 15$

- (c)  $a_n = \frac{n}{2n+1}$

**sol.**  $a_1 = \frac{1}{2 \cdot 1 + 1} = \frac{1}{3}, a_2 = \frac{2}{2 \cdot 2 + 1} = \frac{2}{5}, a_3 = \frac{3}{2 \cdot 3 + 1} = \frac{3}{7}, a_4 = \frac{4}{2 \cdot 4 + 1} = \frac{4}{9}, a_5 = \frac{5}{2 \cdot 5 + 1} = \frac{5}{11}$

- (d)  $a_n = (-3)^n$

**sol.**  $a_1 = (-3)^1 = -3, a_2 = (-3)^2 = 9, a_3 = (-3)^3 = -27, a_4 = (-3)^4 = 81, a_5 = (-3)^5 = -243$

3. Express the following series in the form of numbers.

- (a)  $\sum_{n=1}^5 n(n + 3)$

**sol.**  $\sum_{n=1}^5 n(n + 3)$

$$= (1 \cdot 4) + (2 \cdot 5) + (3 \cdot 6) + (4 \cdot 7)$$

$$+ (5 \cdot 8)$$

$$= 4 + 10 + 18 + 28 + 40$$

(b)  $\sum_{n=2}^6 \frac{1}{3^n}$

**sol.**  $\sum_{n=2}^6 \frac{1}{3^n}$   
 $= \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{3^3} + \frac{1}{3^4} + \frac{1}{3^5} + \frac{1}{3^6}$   
 $= \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{27} + \frac{1}{81} + \frac{1}{243} + \frac{1}{729}$

(c)  $\sum_{n=1}^6 \frac{1}{n(2n+1)}$

**sol.**  $\sum_{n=1}^6 \frac{1}{n(2n+1)}$   
 $= \frac{1}{1(2 \cdot 1 + 1)} + \frac{1}{2(2 \cdot 2 + 1)}$   
 $+ \frac{1}{3(2 \cdot 3 + 1)} + \frac{1}{4(2 \cdot 4 + 1)}$   
 $+ \frac{1}{5(2 \cdot 5 + 1)} + \frac{1}{6(2 \cdot 6 + 1)}$   
 $= \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{10} + \frac{1}{21} + \frac{1}{36} + \frac{1}{55} + \frac{1}{78}$

(d)  $\sum_{n=2}^5 \frac{1}{n^2+2}$

**sol.**  $\sum_{n=2}^5 \frac{1}{n^2+2}$   
 $= \frac{1}{4+2} + \frac{1}{9+2} + \frac{1}{16+2} + \frac{1}{25+2}$   
 $= \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{11} + \frac{1}{18} + \frac{1}{27}$

4. Find the first term, last term and the number of terms of the following series.

(a)  $\sum_{n=3}^{10} 2^2$

**sol.**  $a_3 = 2^2 = 4, a_{10} = 2^2 = 4, n = 10 - 3 + 1 = 8$

(b)  $\sum_{n=1}^8 \frac{n+2}{n}$

**sol.**  $a_1 = \frac{1+2}{1} = \frac{3}{1} = 3, a_8 = \frac{8+2}{8} = \frac{10}{8} = \frac{5}{4}, n = 8 - 1 + 1 = 8$

(c)  $\sum_{n=1}^{10} 3n^2 - n$

**sol.**  $a_1 = 3 \cdot 1^2 - 1 = 2, a_{10} = 3 \cdot 10^2 - 10 = 290, n = 10 - 1 + 1 = 10$

(d)  $\sum_{n=9}^{14} n^2(n-7)$

**sol.**  $a_9 = 9^2(9-7) = 9^2 \cdot 2 = 162, a_{14} = 14^2(14-7) = 14^2 \cdot 7 = 2744, n = 14 - 9 + 1 = 6$

5. Express the following series in the form of  $\sum$ .

(a)  $1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + \frac{1}{30}$

**Sol.**

$a_1 = 1$   
 $a_2 = \frac{1}{2}$   
 $a_3 = \frac{1}{3}$   
 $\vdots$   
 $a_{30} = \frac{1}{30}$   
 $\therefore 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots + \frac{1}{30} = \sum_{n=1}^{30} \frac{1}{n}$

(b)  $1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \dots + 50^3$

**Sol.**

$a_1 = 1^3$   
 $a_2 = 2^3$   
 $a_3 = 3^3$   
 $\vdots$   
 $a_{50} = 50^3$   
 $\therefore 1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \dots + 50^3 = \sum_{n=1}^{50} n^3$

(c)  $1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16}$

**Sol.**

$a_1 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{1-1}$   
 $a_2 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2-1}$   
 $a_3 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{3-1}$   
 $a_4 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{4-1}$   
 $a_5 = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{5-1}$   
 $\therefore 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{16}$   
 $= \sum_{n=1}^5 \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1}$

(d)  $2 \cdot 4 + 4 \cdot 7 + 6 \cdot 10 + 8 \cdot 13 + 10 \cdot 16$

**Sol.**

$a_1 = 2 \cdot 1 \cdot (3 \cdot 1 + 1)$   
 $a_2 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot (3 \cdot 2 + 1)$   
 $a_3 = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot (3 \cdot 3 + 1)$   
 $a_4 = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot (3 \cdot 4 + 1)$   
 $a_5 = 2 \cdot 5 \cdot (3 \cdot 5 + 1)$   
 $\therefore 2 \cdot 4 + 4 \cdot 7 + 6 \cdot 10 + 8 \cdot 13$   
 $+ 10 \cdot 16 = \sum_{n=1}^5 2n(3n+1)$

## 12.2 Arithmetic Progression

General term of an Arithmetic Progression (AP) is given by

$$a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$$

where  $a_1$  is the first term,  $d$  is the common difference and  $n$  is the number of terms.

### 12.2.1 Practice 3

1. Find the number of terms of the AP  $-4 - 2\frac{3}{4} - 1\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} + \dots + 16$ .

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= -4 \\ a_n &= 16 \\ d &= -2\frac{3}{4} - (-4) \\ &= -2\frac{3}{4} + 4 \\ &= \frac{5}{4} \\ 16 &= -4 + (n - 1)\frac{5}{4} \\ 20 &= \frac{5}{4}(n - 1) \\ 80 &= 5(n - 1) \\ n - 1 &= 16 \\ n &= 17 \end{aligned}$$

2. Given that  $a_2 = 4$  and  $a_6 = -8$ , find the 10th term of the AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_2 &= 4 \\ a + (2 - 1)d &= 4 \\ a_6 &= -8 \\ a + (6 - 1)d &= -8 \\ \begin{cases} a + d &= 4 \\ a + 5d &= -8 \end{cases} & \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix} \\ (2) - (1) : 4d &= -12 \\ d &= -3 \\ a + (-3) &= 4 \\ a &= 7 \\ \therefore a_{10} &= 7 + (10 - 1)(-3) \\ &= 7 - 27 \\ &= -20 \end{aligned}$$

3. How many multiples of 7 are there between 50 and 500?

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 56 \\ a_n &= 497 \\ d &= 7 \\ 497 &= 56 + (n - 1)7 \\ 441 &= 7(n - 1) \\ n - 1 &= 63 \\ n &= 64 \end{aligned}$$

4. Find 5 numbers between 30 and 54 such that these numbers form an AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 30 \\ a_7 &= 54 \\ 54 &= 30 + (7 - 1)d \\ 24 &= 6d \\ d &= 4 \\ \therefore \text{These 5 numbers are } 34, 38, 42, 46, \text{ and } 50. \end{aligned}$$

### Arithmetic mean

If A is in between x and y, and x, A, y are in AP, then

$$A = \frac{x + y}{2}$$

### 12.2.2 Practice 4

1. If 9, x, 17 are in AP, find x.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{9 + 17}{2} \\ &= \frac{26}{2} \\ &= 13 \end{aligned}$$

2. Find the arithmetic mean of 26 and -11.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{26 - 11}{2} \\ &= \frac{15}{2} \end{aligned}$$

3. Find x and y when 3, x, 12, y, 21 are in AP.



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x &= \frac{3+12}{2} \\&= \frac{15}{2} \\y &= \frac{12+21}{2} \\&= \frac{33}{2}\end{aligned}$$

## Summation of Arithmetic Progression

The summation formula for AP is given by

$$S_n = \frac{n}{2}(2a + (n-1)d)$$

or

$$S_n = \frac{n}{2}(a_1 + a_n)$$

### 12.2.3 Practice 5

1. Find the sum of the first 16 terms of the AP  $22 + 18 + 14 + 10 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 22 \\n &= 16 \\d &= -4 \\S_n &= \frac{16}{2}(2 \cdot 22 + (-4)(16-1)) \\&= \frac{16}{2}(44 + (-4)(15)) \\&= \frac{16}{2}(44 - 60) \\&= \frac{16}{2}(-16) \\&= -128\end{aligned}$$

2. If the sum of AP  $23 + 19 + 15 + \dots$  is 72, find the number of terms.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 23 \\S_n &= 72 \\d &= -4 \\72 &= \frac{n}{2}(2 \cdot 23 + (-4)(n-1)) \\72 &= \frac{n}{2}(46 + (-4)(n-1)) \\144 &= n(46 + (-4)(n-1)) \\144 &= n(46 - 4n + 4) \\144 &= n(50 - 4n) \\144 &= 50n - 4n^2 \\72 &= 25n - 2n^2\end{aligned}$$

$$2n^2 - 25n + 72 = 0$$

$$(n-8)(2n-9) = 0$$

$$n = 8$$

3. Given that  $S_n = 2n + 3n^2$ , find the first term and the common difference of the AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}S_n &= 2n + 3n^2 \\2n + 3n^2 &= \frac{n}{2}(2a + (n-1)d) \\4n + 6n^2 &= n(2a + (n-1)d) \\4n + 6n^2 &= 2na + (n-1)nd \\4n + 6n^2 &= 2na + n^2d - nd \\4n + 6n^2 &= (2a-d)n + dn^2\end{aligned}$$

Comparing both sides,

$$2a - d = 4$$

$$d = 6$$

$$a = 5$$

### 12.2.4 Exercise 12.2

1. Find the 10th terms of the AP  $5, 13, 21, \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 5 \\n &= 10 \\d &= 8 \\a_{10} &= 5 + (10-1) \cdot 8 \\&= 5 + 72 \\&= 77\end{aligned}$$

2. Find the 8th term of the AP  $5, 4\frac{1}{4}, 3\frac{1}{2}, 2\frac{3}{4}, \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 5 \\n &= 8 \\d &= -\frac{3}{4} \\a_8 &= 5 + (8 - 1) \cdot -\frac{3}{4} \\&= 5 - \frac{3}{4} \cdot 7 \\&= 5 - \frac{21}{4} \\&= -\frac{1}{4}\end{aligned}$$

3. Find the number of terms of the following AP.

(a)  $4, 9, \dots, 64$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 4 \\a_n &= 64 \\d &= 5 \\64 &= 4 + (n - 1) \cdot 5 \\60 &= 5(n - 1) \\12 &= n - 1 \\n &= 13\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $4\frac{1}{3}, 3\frac{2}{3}, 3, \dots, -10\frac{1}{3}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 4\frac{1}{3} \\a_n &= -10\frac{1}{3} \\d &= -\frac{2}{3} \\-10\frac{1}{3} &= 4\frac{1}{3} + (n - 1) \cdot -\frac{2}{3} \\-\frac{31}{3} &= \frac{13}{3} - \frac{1}{3}(n - 1) \\-31 &= 13 - 2n + 2 \\-46 &= 2n \\n &= 23\end{aligned}$$

4. The 6th term of an AP is 43, and its 10th term is 75. Find the first term and common difference of this AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_6 &= 43 \\a_{10} &= 75 \\43 &= a + (6 - 1)d \\75 &= a + (10 - 1)d \\32 &= 4d \\d &= 8 \\43 &= a + 5 \cdot 8 \\43 &= a + 40 \\3 &= a \\a &= 3 \\\therefore a_1 &= 3, d = 8\end{aligned}$$

5. The 7th term of an AP is -10, and the 12th term -25, find the 15th term of this AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_7 &= -10 \\a_{12} &= -25 \\-10 &= a + (7 - 1)d \\-25 &= a + (12 - 1)d \\-15 &= 5d \\d &= -3 \\-10 &= a + 6 \cdot -3 \\-10 &= a - 18 \\a &= 8 \\a_{15} &= 8 + (15 - 1) \cdot -3 \\&= 8 - 42 \\&= -34\end{aligned}$$

6. How many multiples of 7 are there between 100 and 200?

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a &= 105 \\d &= 7 \\a_n &= 196 \\196 &= 105 + (n - 1) \cdot 7 \\91 &= 7(n - 1) \\13 &= n - 1 \\n &= 14\end{aligned}$$

7. Find the arithmetic mean of the following number pairs.

(a)  $(8, 20)$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{8 + 20}{2} = 14$$

(b)  $(-9, 17)$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{-9 + 17}{2} = 4$$

8. Find 5 numbers between 22 and 58 such that these 7 numbers are in AP.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 22$$

$$a_7 = 58$$

$$58 = 22 + (7 - 1)d$$

$$36 = 6d$$

$$d = 6$$

$\therefore$  These 5 numbers are 22, 28, 34, 40, 46

9. Find the sum of first 20 terms of AP  $12 + 15 + 18 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 12$$

$$n = 20$$

$$d = 3$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{20} &= \frac{20}{2}(2 \cdot 12 + (20 - 1) \cdot 3) \\ &= 10(24 + 57) \\ &= 10(81) \\ &= 810 \end{aligned}$$

10. Find the sum of first 12 terms of the AP  $18 + 10 + 2 - 6 - \dots$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 18$$

$$n = 12$$

$$d = -8$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{12} &= \frac{12}{2}(2 \cdot 18 + (12 - 1) \cdot -8) \\ &= 6(36 - 88) \\ &= 6(-52) \\ &= -312 \end{aligned}$$

11. Find the sum of first 14 terms of the AP  $\frac{1}{6} + \frac{4}{3} + \frac{5}{2} + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{6}$$

$$n = 14$$

$$d = \frac{7}{6}$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{14} &= \frac{14}{2}\left(2 \cdot \frac{1}{6} + (14 - 1) \cdot \frac{7}{6}\right) \\ &= 7\left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{91}{6}\right) \\ &= 7 \cdot \frac{93}{6} \\ &= 7 \cdot \frac{31}{2} \\ &= \frac{217}{2} \end{aligned}$$

12. Find the sum of all the multiples of 13 in between 200 and 800.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 208$$

$$a_n = 793$$

$$d = 13$$

$$793 = 208 + (n - 1) \cdot 13$$

$$585 = 13(n - 1)$$

$$45 = n - 1$$

$$n = 46$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{46} &= \frac{46}{2}(2 \cdot 208 + (46 - 1) \cdot 13) \\ &= 23(416 + 585) \\ &= 23(1001) \\ &= 23023 \end{aligned}$$

13. If the sum of first  $n$  terms of the AP  $-3, -7, -11, \dots$  is  $-903$ , find the value of  $n$ .

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = -3$$

$$d = -4$$

$$-903 = \frac{n}{2}(2 \cdot (-3) - 4(n - 1))$$

$$-1806 = -2n - 4n^2$$

$$4n^2 + 2n - 1806 = 0$$

$$2n^2 + n - 903 = 0$$

$$(n - 21)(2n + 43) = 0$$

$$n = 21, -43(\text{invalid})$$

$$\therefore n = 21$$

14. Given that the first 3 terms of an AP are  $x, 3x - 4, 2x + 7$ , find:

(a) The value of  $x$

**Sol.**

$$3x - 4 = \frac{x + 2x + 7}{2}$$

$$6x - 8 = 3x + 7$$

$$3x = 15$$

$$x = 5$$

(b) The common difference

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = x = 5$$

$$a_2 = 3x - 4 = 3 \cdot 5 - 4 = 11$$

$$d = 11 - 5$$

$$= 6$$

(c) The sum of first 10 terms.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = x = 5$$

$$n = 10$$

$$d = 6$$

$$S_{10} = \frac{10}{2}(2 \cdot 5 + (10 - 1) \cdot 6)$$

$$= 5(10 + 54)$$

$$= 5(64)$$

$$= 320$$

15. Let the sum of the first  $n$  terms of an AP to be  $S_n = \frac{n(n+1)}{4}$ , find:

(a) The first term

**Sol.**

$$\frac{n(n+1)}{4} = \frac{n}{2}(2a + (n-1)d)$$

$$n(n+1) = 2n(2a + dn - d)$$

$$n^2 + n = 4na + 2dn^2 - 2nd$$

$$n^2 + n = 2dn^2 + (4a - 2d)n$$

Comparing both sides,

$$2d = 1$$

$$d = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$4a - 2d = 1$$

$$4a - 1 = 1$$

$$4a = 2$$

$$a = \frac{1}{2}$$

(b) The common difference

**Sol.**

$$d = \frac{1}{2}$$

gg

(c) The 6th terms

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$n = 6$$

$$d = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$a_6 = \frac{1}{2} + (6 - 1) \cdot \frac{1}{2}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{5}{2}$$

$$= 3$$

(d) The sum from 6th term to 10th term

**Sol.**

$$a = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$d = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$S_{10} = \frac{10}{2}(2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + (10 - 1) \cdot \frac{1}{2})$$

$$= \frac{10}{2}(1 + \frac{9}{2})$$

$$= 5 \cdot \frac{11}{2}$$

$$= \frac{55}{2}$$

$$S_5 = \frac{5}{2}(2 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + (5 - 1) \cdot \frac{1}{2})$$

$$= \frac{5}{2}(1 + 2)$$

$$= \frac{15}{2}$$

$$S_{10} - S_5 = \frac{55}{2} - \frac{15}{2}$$

$$= \frac{40}{2}$$

$$= 20$$

16. Given three numbers in an AP, the sum of these three numbers is 30, and the sum of square of these numbers is 318, find these three numbers.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 + a_2 + a_3 &= 30 \\a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 &= 318 \\a_2 - a_1 &= a_3 - a_2 \\a_1 - 2a_2 + a_3 &= 0 \\3a_2 &= 30 \\a_2 &= 10 \\a_1 - 20 + a_3 &= 0 \\a_1 + a_3 &= 20 \\a_3 &= 20 - a_1 \\a_1^2 + 100 + (20 - a_1)^2 &= 318 \\a_1^2 + 100 + 400 + a_1^2 - 40a_1 &= 318 \\2a_1^2 - 40a_1 + 182 &= 0 \\a_1^2 - 20a_1 + 91 &= 0 \\(a_1 - 7)(a_1 - 13) &= 0 \\a_1 &= 7 \text{ or } a_1 = 13\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  These three numbers are 7, 10, and 13

17. Find the sum of all the numbers between 100 and 200 that are both the multiples of 2 and 3.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 102 \\d &= 6 \\a_n &= 198 \\198 &= 102 + (n - 1) \cdot 6 \\96 &= 6(n - 1) \\6n - 6 &= 96 \\6n &= 102 \\n &= 17 \\S_{17} &= \frac{17}{2}(2 \cdot 102 + (17 - 1) \cdot 6) \\&= \frac{17}{2}(204 + 96) \\&= \frac{17}{2}(300) \\&= 150 \cdot 17 \\&= 2550\end{aligned}$$

18. Given an AP  $-100 - 96 - 92 - \dots$ :

- (a) Find the term where the number become positive.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= -100 \\d &= 4 \\a_n &= -100 + (n - 1) \cdot 4 > 0 \\-100 + 4n - 4 &> 0 \\4n &> 104 \\n &> 26 \\\therefore n &= 27\end{aligned}$$

- (b) Find the term where the sum of this AP becomes positive.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}S_n &= \frac{n}{2}(2(-100) + (n - 1) \cdot (4)) > 0 \\\frac{n}{2}(-200 + 4n - 4) &> 0 \\\frac{n}{2}(-204 + 4n) &> 0 \\n(2n - 102) &> 0 \\n(n - 51) &> 0 \\n &> 51 \\\therefore n &= 52\end{aligned}$$

19. Find the first negative term of the AP  $20, 19\frac{1}{5}, 18\frac{2}{5}, \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 20 \\d &= -\frac{4}{5} \\a_n &= 20 + (n - 1) \cdot \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) < 0 \\100 - 4n + 4 &< 0 \\4n &> 104 \\n &> 26 \\\therefore n &= 27\end{aligned}$$

20. Given an AP  $10 + 9\frac{1}{5} + 8\frac{2}{5} + \dots$ , what is the first negative term? When will the sum of the terms become negative, and what's the value of it?

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_n &= 10 + (n-1) \cdot \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) < 0 \\10 - \frac{4}{5}(n-1) &< 0 \\50 - 4n + 4 &< 0 \\-4n &< -54 \\n &> 13\frac{1}{2} \\\therefore n &= 14 \\S_n &= \frac{n}{2} \left(2 \cdot 10 + (n-1) \cdot \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right)\right) < 0 \\\frac{n}{2} \left(20 - \frac{4}{5}(n-1)\right) &< 0 \\20n - \frac{4}{5}(n^2 - n) &< 0 \\100n - 4n^2 + 4n &< 0 \\25n - n^2 + n &< 0 \\26n - n^2 &< 0 \\n(n-26) &> 0 \\n &> 26 \\\therefore n &= 27\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}S_{27} &= \frac{27}{2} \left(2 \cdot 10 + (27-1) \cdot \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right)\right) \\&= \frac{27}{2} \left(20 - \frac{4}{5}(27-1)\right) \\&= \frac{27}{2} \left(20 - \frac{4}{5}(26)\right) \\&= \frac{27}{2} \cdot \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) \\&= -\frac{54}{5}\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  The first negative term is the 14th term

$\therefore$  The first term where the sum of the terms becomes negative is the 27th term

$\therefore$  The value of the sum of the terms when it becomes negative is  $-\frac{54}{5}$

21. Given a polygon which all their internal angles are in AP. The common difference of this AP is  $6^\circ$ , the largest angle is  $135^\circ$ . How many sides does this polygon have?

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 135 \\d &= -6 \\\frac{n}{2} (2 \cdot 135 + (n-1) \cdot (-6)) &= 180(n-2) \\n(270 - 6(n-1)) &= 360(n-2) \\n(276 - 6n) &= 360n - 720 \\276n - 6n^2 &= 360n - 720 \\46n - n^2 &= 60n - 120 \\n^2 + 14n - 120 &= 0 \\(n+20)(n-6) &= 0 \\n &= -20 \text{ (invalid)} \\n &= 6 \\\therefore \text{The number of sides is } 6\end{aligned}$$

22. Given an AP which its 5th term is 3 and the sum of its first 10 terms is  $26\frac{1}{4}$ . Which term in this AP is 0?

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_5 &= a + (5-1)d = 3 \\a + 4d &= 3 \\S_{10} &= \frac{10}{2} (2a + (10-1)d) = 26\frac{1}{4} \\5(2a + 9d) &= 26\frac{1}{4} \\20(2a + 9d) &= 105 \\4(2a + 9d) &= 21 \\8a + 36d &= 21 \\8a + 32d &= 24 \\4d &= -3 \\d &= -\frac{3}{4} \\a &= 3 + \frac{3}{4} \cdot 4 \\&= 6 \\a_n &= 6 + (n-1) \cdot \left(-\frac{3}{4}\right) = 0 \\6 - \frac{3}{4}(n-1) &= 0 \\24 - 3n + 3 &= 0 \\3n &= 27 \\n &= 9\end{aligned}$$

23. Given that the sum of the first 6 terms of an AP is 96, and the sum of the first 20 terms is 3 times the sum of the first 10 terms of this AP. Find the first term and the 10th term of it.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}S_6 &= \frac{6}{2}(2a + (6-1)d) = 96 \\3(2a + 5d) &= 96 \\2a + 5d &= 32 \\S_{20} &= 3S_{10} \\\frac{20}{2}(2a + (20-1)d) &= 3 \cdot \frac{10}{2}(2a + (10-1)d) \\10(2a + 19d) &= 15(2a + 9d) \\2(2a + 19d) &= 3(2a + 9d) \\4a + 38d &= 6a + 27d \\2a - 11d &= 0 \\16d &= 32 \\d &= 2 \\a &= \frac{11 \cdot 2}{2} \\&= 11 \\a_{10} &= 11 + (10-1) \cdot 2 \\&= 29\end{aligned}$$

24. Given that  $5^2 \cdot 5^4 \cdot 5^6 \cdot \dots \cdot 5^{2n} = (0.04)^{-28}$ , find the value of  $n$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(0.04)^{-28} &= \frac{1}{25}^{-28} \\&= (5^{-2})^{-28} \\&= 5^{56} \\\therefore n^a \cdot n^b &= n^{a+b} \\2 + 4 + 6 + \dots + 2n &= 56 \\S_n &= \frac{n}{2}(2 \cdot 2 + (n-1) \cdot 2) = 56 \\n(4 + 2(n-1)) &= 112 \\n(2 + 2n) &= 112 \\2n^2 + 2n &= 112 \\n^2 + n - 56 &= 0 \\(n+8)(n-7) &= 0 \\n &= -8 \text{ (invalid)} \\n &= 7\end{aligned}$$

25. Given that the 9th term of an AP is double the 5th term of it. Find the ratio of the sum of first 9 terms and the sum of first 5 terms of the AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_9 &= 2a_5 \\a + (9-1)d &= 2(a + (5-1)d) \\a + 8d &= 2a + 8d \\a &= 0 \\S_9 : S_5 &= \frac{9}{2}(2a + a_9) : \frac{5}{2}(2a + a_5) \\&= \frac{9}{2}(2a + 2a_5) : \frac{5}{2}(2a + a_5) \\&= 9(a + a_5) : \frac{5}{2}(2a + a_5) \\\frac{S_9}{S_5} &= \frac{9(a + a_5)}{\frac{5}{2}(2a + a_5)} \\&= \frac{18(a + a_5)}{5(2a + a_5)} \\&= \frac{18 \cdot a_5}{5 \cdot a_5} \\&= \frac{18}{5} \\\therefore S_9 : S_5 &= 18 : 5\end{aligned}$$

## 12.3 Geometric Progression

The general formula of a geometric progression (GP) is given by

$$a_n = a_1 \cdot r^{n-1}$$

where  $a_1$  is the first term,  $r$  is the common ratio, and  $n$  is the number of terms.

### 12.3.1 Practice 6

1. Find the 6th term of the GP 12, -18, 27, ...

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 12 \\r &= \frac{-18}{12} \\&= -\frac{3}{2} \\a_6 &= 12 \cdot \left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^{6-1} \\&= 12 \cdot \left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^5 \\&= 12 \cdot \left(-\frac{243}{32}\right) \\&= -\frac{729}{8}\end{aligned}$$

2. Find the number of terms of GP  $\frac{1}{64} - \frac{1}{32} + \frac{1}{16} - \frac{1}{8} + \dots - 512$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= \frac{1}{64} \\
 r &= \frac{-\frac{1}{32}}{\frac{1}{64}} \\
 &= -2 \\
 -512 &= \frac{1}{64}(-2)^{n-1} \\
 (-2)^9 &= \frac{1}{26}(-2)^{n-1} \\
 (-2)^{15} &= (-2)^{n-1} \\
 n-1 &= 15 \\
 n &= 16
 \end{aligned}$$

3. The 5th term of a GP is 3, and its 9th term is  $\frac{1}{27}$ , find the first term and the common ratio of this GP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_5 &= ar^4 = 3 \\
 a_9 &= ar^8 = \frac{1}{27} \\
 r^4 &= \frac{1}{27} \cdot \frac{1}{3} \\
 &= \frac{1}{81} \\
 r &= \frac{1}{3} \\
 a_1 &= 3 \cdot 81 \\
 &= 243
 \end{aligned}$$

4. Find 5 numbers between  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{128}$  such that these 7 numbers are in GP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= \frac{1}{2} \\
 n &= 7 \\
 \frac{1}{128} &= \frac{1}{2}r^{7-1} \\
 r^6 &= \frac{1}{64} \\
 r &= \frac{1}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  These 5 numbers are  $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{32}, \frac{1}{64}$

### Geometric Mean

The geometric mean G of two numbers x and y is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{G}{x} &= \frac{G}{y} \\
 G^2 &= xy \\
 G &= \sqrt[2]{xy}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 12.3.2 Practice 7

Find the geometric mean of  $\frac{27}{8}$  and  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 G &= \pm \sqrt[2]{\frac{27}{8} \cdot \frac{2}{3}} \\
 &= \pm \sqrt[2]{\frac{9}{4}} \\
 &= \pm \frac{3}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

### Summation of Geometric Progression

The sum of n terms of a GP is given by

$$S_n = \frac{a_1(1-r^n)}{1-r} \quad (r \neq 1)$$

### 12.3.3 Practice 8

1. Find the sum of the first 8 terms of GP  $3 + 6 + 12 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 3 \\
 r &= \frac{6}{3} \\
 &= 2 \\
 n &= 8 \\
 S_n &= \frac{3(1-2^8)}{1-2} \\
 &= \frac{3(1-256)}{1-2} \\
 &= 3 \cdot 255 \\
 &= 765
 \end{aligned}$$

2. Find the sum of the GP  $1 + \sqrt{3} + 3 + \dots + 81$



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 1 \\
 r &= \sqrt{3} \\
 81 &= 1 \cdot (\sqrt{3})^{n-1} \\
 3^4 &= (\sqrt{3})^{n-1} \\
 (\sqrt{3})^8 &= (\sqrt{3})^{n-1} \\
 n-1 &= 8 \\
 n &= 9 \\
 S_n &= \frac{1(1 - (\sqrt{3})^9)}{1 - \sqrt{3}} \\
 &= \frac{1 - 81\sqrt{3}}{1 - \sqrt{3}} \\
 &= \frac{(1 - 81\sqrt{3})(1 + \sqrt{3})}{-2} \\
 &= \frac{1 - 81\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{3} - 243}{-2} \\
 &= \frac{-242 - 80\sqrt{3}}{-2} \\
 &= 121 + 40\sqrt{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Given that the sum of the first  $n$  terms of GP  $4\frac{4}{5}, 1\frac{3}{5}, \frac{8}{15}, \dots$  is  $7\frac{145}{729}$ , find  $n$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= \frac{24}{5} \\
 r &= \frac{8}{5} \cdot \frac{5}{24} \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \\
 S_n &= \frac{24}{5} \cdot \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{3})^n}{1 - \frac{1}{3}} \\
 \frac{5248}{729} &= \frac{24}{5} \cdot \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{3})^n}{\frac{2}{3}} \\
 \frac{5248}{729} \cdot \frac{5}{24} \cdot \frac{2}{3} &= 1 - (\frac{1}{3})^n \\
 \frac{6560}{6561} &= 1 - (\frac{1}{3})^n \\
 -\frac{1}{6561} &= -(\frac{1}{3})^n \\
 (\frac{1}{3})^8 &= (\frac{1}{3})^n \\
 n &= 8
 \end{aligned}$$

## Summation of Infinite Geometric Progression

The sum of infinite GP is given by

$$S_{\infty} = \frac{a_1}{1-r} \quad (-1 < r < 1)$$

## 12.3.4 Practice 9

1. Find the sum of the following infinite GP.

(a)  $16 + 8 + 4 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 16 \\
 r &= \frac{8}{16} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \\
 S_{\infty} &= \frac{16}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{16}{\frac{1}{2}} \\
 &= 32
 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $18 - 12 + 8 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 18 \\
 r &= \frac{8}{-12} \\
 &= -\frac{2}{3} \\
 S_{\infty} &= \frac{18}{1 + \frac{2}{3}} \\
 &= \frac{18}{\frac{5}{3}} \\
 &= \frac{54}{5}
 \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $1 + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{9}{16} + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 1 \\
 r &= \frac{9}{16} \cdot \frac{16}{9} \\
 &= \frac{3}{4} \\
 S_{\infty} &= \frac{1}{1 - \frac{3}{4}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\frac{1}{4}} \\
 &= 4
 \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $\sqrt{2} + 1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= \sqrt{2} \\ r &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ S_\infty &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{\sqrt{2}}} \\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}-1} \\ &= 2(\sqrt{2}+1)\end{aligned}$$

2. Convert the following recurring decimals to fraction using the summation of infinite geometric series.

(a)  $0.\bar{3}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 0.3 \\ r &= 0.1 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.3}{1 - 0.1} \\ &= \frac{0.3}{0.9} \\ &= \frac{1}{3}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 0.\bar{3} = \frac{1}{3}$$

(b)  $0.5\bar{3}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 0.03 \\ r &= 0.01 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.03}{1 - 0.01} \\ &= \frac{0.03}{0.99} \\ &= \frac{3}{99}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore 0.5\bar{3} &= \frac{5}{10} + \frac{3}{99} \\ &= \frac{53}{99}\end{aligned}$$

### 12.3.5 Exercise 12.3

1. Find the 10th term of the GP 2, 4, 8, ...

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 2 \\ r &= \frac{4}{2} \\ &= 2 \\ a_{10} &= 2 \cdot 2^{10-1} \\ &= 2 \cdot 512 \\ &= 1024\end{aligned}$$

2. Find the 8th term of the GP 243, -162, 108, ...

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 243 \\ r &= \frac{-162}{243} \\ &= -\frac{2}{3} \\ a_8 &= 243 \cdot \left(-\frac{2}{3}\right)^{8-1} \\ &= 243 \cdot \left(-\frac{128}{2187}\right) \\ &= -\frac{128}{9}\end{aligned}$$

3. Find the number of terms of the following GP.

(a) 8, 4, 2, 1, ...,  $\frac{1}{64}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 8 \\ r &= \frac{4}{8} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{64} &= 8 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \\ \frac{1}{512} &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \\ \frac{1}{2^9} &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \\ n-1 &= 9 \\ n &= 10\end{aligned}$$

(b) 6, -18, 54, ..., -13122

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 6 \\ r &= \frac{-18}{6} \\ &= -3 \\ -13122 &= 6 \cdot (-3)^{n-1} \\ -2187 &= (-3)^{n-1} \\ (-3)^7 &= (-3)^{n-1} \\ n-1 &= 7 \\ n &= 8\end{aligned}$$

(c)  $54, 36, 24, \dots, 3\frac{13}{81}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 54 \\r &= \frac{36}{54} \\&= \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{256}{81} &= 54 \cdot \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{n-1} \\ \frac{256}{81} \cdot \frac{1}{54} &= \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{n-1} \\ \frac{128}{2187} &= \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{n-1} \\ \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^7 &= \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{n-1} \\ n-1 &= 7 \\ n &= 8\end{aligned}$$

4. Given that the 2nd term of a GP is 12, and its 4th term is 108, find the first term and the common ratio of it.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_2 &= ar = 12 \\a_4 &= ar^3 = 109 \\r^2 &= 9 \\r &= \pm 3 \\a_1 &= \pm 4 \\\therefore a_1 &= 4, r = 3 \text{ or } a_1 = -4, r = -3\end{aligned}$$

5. Given that the 3rd term of an GP is  $1\frac{1}{3}$ , and its 8th term is  $-10\frac{1}{8}$ . Find the 5th term of this AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_3 &= ar^2 = \frac{4}{3} \\a_8 &= ar^7 = -\frac{81}{8} \\r^5 &= -\frac{81}{8} \cdot \frac{3}{4} \\&= -\frac{243}{32} \\&= \left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^5 \\r &= -\frac{3}{2} \\a &= \frac{4}{3} \cdot \frac{4}{9} \\&= \frac{16}{27} \\a_5 &= \frac{16}{27} \cdot \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^4 \\&= \frac{16}{27} \cdot \frac{81}{16} \\&= 3\end{aligned}$$

6. Find the geometric mean of 2 and 18.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}G &= \pm \sqrt[2]{2 \cdot 18} \\&= \pm \sqrt[2]{36} \\&= \pm 6\end{aligned}$$

7. Given that  $x+12$ ,  $x+4$  and  $x-2$  are in GP, find the value of  $x$  and the common ratio of this GP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x+4 &= \pm \sqrt{(x+12)(x-2)} \\x^2 + 8x + 16 &= x^2 + 10x - 24 \\2x &= 40 \\x &= 20 \\a_1 &= 20 + 12 = 32 \\a_2 &= 20 + 4 = 24 \\r &= \frac{24}{32} \\&= \frac{3}{4}\end{aligned}$$

8. Find 3 numbers between 14 and 224 such that these 5 numbers are in GP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 14 \\a_5 &= 224 \\244 &= 14 \cdot r^4 \\16 &= r^4 \\(\pm 2)^4 &= r^4 \\r &= \pm 2\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  These 3 numbers are 28, 56, 112  
or -28, 56, -112

9. Calculate the sum of the first 6 terms of the GP  $2 + 6 + 18 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 2 \\r &= \frac{6}{2} \\&= 3 \\S_6 &= \frac{2(1-3^6)}{1-3} \\&= \frac{2(1-729)}{-2} \\&= 728\end{aligned}$$

10. Calculate the sum of the first 8 terms of the GP  $32 - 16 + 8 - \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 32 \\r &= \frac{-16}{32} \\&= -\frac{1}{2} \\S_8 &= \frac{32(1 - (\frac{1}{2})^8)}{1 + \frac{1}{2}} \\&= \frac{32(1 - \frac{1}{256})}{\frac{3}{2}} \\&= 32 \cdot \frac{255}{256} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \\&= \frac{85}{4}\end{aligned}$$

11. Find the sum of the GP  $14 - 28 + 56 - \dots + 3584$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 14 \\r &= \frac{-28}{14} = -2 \\3584 &= 14 \cdot (-2)^{n-1} \\256 &= (-2)^{n-1} \\(-2)^8 &= (-2)^{n-1} \\n - 1 &= 8 \\n &= 9 \\S_9 &= \frac{14(1 - (-2)^9)}{1 - (-2)} \\&= \frac{14(1 + 512)}{3} \\&= \frac{14 \cdot 513}{3} \\&= 2394\end{aligned}$$

12. If the first term of a GP is 7, its common ratio is 3, and the sum of its terms is 847, find the number of terms and the last term of this GP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 7 \\r &= 3 \\S_n &= \frac{7(1 - 3^n)}{1 - 3} = 847 \\7(1 - 3^n) &= -1694 \\1 - 3^n &= -242 \\3^n &= 243 \\3^n &= 3^5 \\n &= 5 \\a_5 &= 7 \cdot 3^4 = 567\end{aligned}$$

13. Find the sum of the following infinite GP.

(a)  $24 + 18 + 13\frac{1}{2} + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 24 \\r &= \frac{18}{24} = \frac{3}{4} \\S_\infty &= \frac{24}{1 - \frac{3}{4}} \\&= \frac{24}{\frac{1}{4}} \\&= 96\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $27 - 9 + 3 - 1 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 27 \\r &= \frac{-9}{27} = -\frac{1}{3} \\S_\infty &= \frac{27}{1 + \frac{1}{3}} \\&= \frac{27}{\frac{4}{3}} \\&= \frac{81}{4}\end{aligned}$$

(c)  $2 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{8} - \frac{1}{32} + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 2 \\r &= \frac{-\frac{1}{2}}{2} = -\frac{1}{4} \\S_\infty &= \frac{2}{1 + \frac{1}{4}} \\&= \frac{2}{\frac{5}{4}} \\&= \frac{8}{5}\end{aligned}$$

14. Given an infinite GP which has a sum of 24 and first term of 30, find the common difference.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 30 \\S_\infty &= 24 \\24 &= \frac{30}{1 - r} \\24(1 - r) &= 30 \\24 - 24r &= 30 \\-24r &= 6 \\r &= -\frac{1}{4}\end{aligned}$$

15. Convert the following recurring decimals into fractions.

(a)  $0.\overline{45}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 0.45 \\ r &= 0.01 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.45}{1 - 0.01} \\ &= \frac{0.45}{0.99} \\ &= \frac{45}{99} \\ &= \frac{5}{11} \\ \therefore 0.\overline{45} &= \frac{5}{11} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $0.\overline{037}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 0.037 \\ r &= 0.001 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.037}{1 - 0.001} \\ &= \frac{0.037}{0.999} \\ &= \frac{37}{999} \\ &= \frac{1}{27} \\ \therefore 0.\overline{037} &= \frac{1}{27} \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $0.2\overline{18}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 0.018 \\ r &= 0.01 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.018}{1 - 0.01} \\ &= \frac{0.018}{0.99} \\ &= \frac{18}{990} \\ &= \frac{1}{55} \\ \therefore 0.2\overline{18} &= \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{55} \\ &= \frac{12}{55} \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $1.\overline{3}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= 0.3 \\ r &= 0.1 \\ S_\infty &= \frac{0.3}{1 - 0.1} \\ &= \frac{0.3}{0.9} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \\ \therefore 1.\overline{3} &= 1 + \frac{1}{3} \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$

16. Three integers are in GP, summing up to 42 while accumulating up to 512, find these three integers.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 + a_2 + a_3 &= 42 \\ a_1 a_2 a_3 &= 512 \\ a_2 &= \pm \sqrt{a_1 a_3} \\ a_1 a_3 &= a_2^2 \\ a_2^3 &= 512 \\ a_2 &= \sqrt[3]{512} \\ &= 8 \\ a_1 a_3 &= 64 \\ a_3 &= \frac{64}{a_1} \\ a_1 + 8 + \frac{64}{a_1} &= 42 \\ a_1 + \frac{64}{a_1} &= 34 \\ a_1^2 + 64 &= 34a_1 \\ a_1^2 - 34a_1 + 64 &= 0 \\ (a_1 - 32)(a_1 - 2) &= 0 \\ a_1 &= 32 \text{ or } a_1 = 2 \\ \therefore \text{These three integers are } 2, 8, 32 \end{aligned}$$

17. The sum of first 6 term of a GP is 9 times the sum of first 3 terms. Find the common ratio.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_6 &= 9S_3 \\
 \frac{a(1-r^6)}{1-r} &= 9 \cdot \frac{a(1-r^3)}{1-r} \\
 a(1-r^6) &= 9a(1-r^3) \\
 1-r^6 &= 9(1-r^3) \\
 &= 9-9r^3 \\
 r^6-9r^3+8 &= 0 \\
 (r^3-8)(r^3-1) &= 0 \\
 r^3 &= 8 \text{ or } r^3 = 1 \\
 r &= 1 \text{ (invalid)} \\
 r &= 2
 \end{aligned}$$

18. Given a GP, its first term is 16, last term is  $\frac{1}{2}$  and its sum is  $31\frac{1}{2}$ , find its common ratio and number of terms.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1 &= 16 \\
 \frac{1}{2} &= 16r^{n-1} \\
 \frac{1}{32} &= r^{n-1} \\
 &= r^n \cdot \frac{1}{r} \\
 r^n &= \frac{r}{32} \\
 \frac{63}{2} &= \frac{16(1-r^n)}{1-r} \\
 63(1-r) &= 32(1-r^n) \\
 63-63r &= 32-32r^n \\
 -31 &= 32r^n-63r \\
 -31 &= r-63r \\
 -31 &= -62r \\
 r &= \frac{1}{2} \\
 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} &= \frac{1}{32} \\
 &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^5 \\
 n-1 &= 5 \\
 n &= 6
 \end{aligned}$$

19. Given a GP, its 3rd term is 6 less than its 2nd term, and its 2nd term is 9 less than its 1st term. Find the 4th term and the sum of the first 4 terms.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Let } x &= a_2 \\
 a_3 &= x-6 \\
 a_1 &= x+9 \\
 x &= \pm\sqrt{(x-6)(x+9)} \\
 x^2 &= x^2+3x-54 \\
 3x-54 &= 0 \\
 x &= 18 \\
 a_2 &= 18 \\
 a_1 &= 27 \\
 r &= \frac{12}{18} \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} \\
 a_4 &= 27 \cdot \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3 \\
 &= 8 \\
 S_4 &= \frac{27(1-(\frac{16}{3})^4)}{1-\frac{2}{3}} \\
 &= \frac{27(1-\frac{8}{81})}{\frac{1}{3}} \\
 &= 81 \cdot \frac{65}{81} \\
 &= 65
 \end{aligned}$$

20. Given an infinite GP, its common ratio is positive and the sum of it is 9. The sum of the first two terms is 5, find the 4th term.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}S_{\infty} &= \frac{a}{1-r} = 9 \\a &= 9(1-r) \\&= 9-9r \\S_2 &= \frac{a(1-r^2)}{1-r} = 5 \\a-ar^2 &= 5-5r \\9-9r-(9-9r)r^2 &= 5-5r \\9-9r-9r^2+9r^3 &= 5-5r \\4-4r-9r^2+9r^3 &= 0 \\4(1-r)-9r^2(1-r) &= 0 \\(4-9r^2)(1-r) &= 0 \\(9r^2-4)(r-1) &= 0 \\(3r^2+2)(3r^2-2)(r-1) &= 0 \\r &= 1 \text{ (invalid)} \\r &= -\frac{2}{3} \text{ (invalid)} \\r &= \frac{2}{3} \\a &= 9(1-\frac{2}{3}) \\&= 3 \\a_4 &= 3(\frac{2}{3})^3 \\&= 3 \cdot \frac{8}{27} \\&= \frac{8}{9}\end{aligned}$$

21. If  $x+1$ ,  $x-2$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}x$  are the first three terms of an infinite GP, find:

(a) The value of  $x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x-2 &= \pm \sqrt{(x+1)(\frac{1}{2}x)} \\x^2-4x+4 &= \frac{1}{2}x(x+1) \\2x^2-8x+8 &= x^2+x \\x^2-9x+8 &= 0 \\(x-8)(x-1) &= 0 \\x &= 8 \text{ or } x = 1\end{aligned}$$

(b) The common ratio

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } x &= 8, \\r &= \frac{8-2}{8+1} \\&= \frac{6}{9} \\&= \frac{2}{3}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } x &= 1, \\r &= \frac{1-2}{1+1} \\&= -\frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

(c) The sum of the GP

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } x &= 8, \\S_{\infty} &= \frac{a}{1-r} \\&= \frac{9}{1-\frac{2}{3}} \\&= 9 \cdot 3 \\&= 27\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } x &= 1, \\S_{\infty} &= \frac{a}{1-r} \\&= \frac{2}{1+\frac{1}{2}} \\&= 2 \cdot \frac{2}{3} \\&= \frac{4}{3}\end{aligned}$$

## 12.4 Simple Summation of Special Series

Sum formula of natural number:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n k = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

Sum formula of square of natural number:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n k^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$$

Sum formula of cube of natural number:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n k^3 = \left[ \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right]^2$$

### 12.4.1 Practice 10

1. Find the sum of the following series.

(a)  $\sum_{k=1}^8 3k$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^8 3k &= 3 \sum_{k=1}^8 k \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{8(8+1)}{2} \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{8 \cdot 9}{2} \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{72}{2} \\ &= 3 \cdot 36 \\ &= 108\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $\sum_{k=1}^{12} k^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^{12} k^2 &= \frac{12(12+1)(2 \cdot 12 + 1)}{6} \\ &= \frac{12 \cdot 13 \cdot 25}{6} \\ &= 650\end{aligned}$$

(c)  $\sum_{k=3}^{10} (2k - 3)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=3}^{10} (2k - 3) &= 2 \sum_{k=3}^{10} k - \sum_{k=3}^{10} 3 \\ &= 2 \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{10} k - \sum_{k=1}^2 k \right] - (30 - 6) \\ &= 2 \left[ \frac{10(10+1)}{2} - \frac{2(2+1)}{2} \right] - 8 \\ &= 2(55 - 3) - 24 \\ &= 2 \cdot 52 - 24 \\ &= 104 - 24 \\ &= 80\end{aligned}$$

(d)  $\sum_{k=7}^{13} 3k^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=7}^{13} 3k^2 &= 3 \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{13} k^2 - \sum_{k=1}^6 k^2 \right] \\ &= 3 \cdot \left[ \frac{13(13+1)(2 \cdot 13 + 1)}{6} - \frac{6(6+1)(2 \cdot 6 + 1)}{6} \right] \\ &= 3 \cdot \left[ \frac{13 \cdot 14 \cdot 27}{6} - \frac{6 \cdot 7 \cdot 13}{6} \right] \\ &= 3 \cdot \left[ \frac{4914}{6} - \frac{546}{6} \right] \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{4368}{6} \\ &= 3 \cdot 728 \\ &= 2184\end{aligned}$$

2. Given that the  $n$ th term of a series is  $n(n+3)$ , find the sum of the first 20 terms of the series.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k=1}^{20} k(k+3) &= \sum_{k=1}^{20} k^2 + 3k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{20} k^2 + 3 \sum_{k=1}^{20} k \\ &= \frac{20(20+1)(2 \cdot 20 + 1)}{6} + 3 \cdot \frac{20(20+1)}{2} \\ &= \frac{20 \cdot 21 \cdot 41}{6} + 3 \cdot \frac{20 \cdot 21}{2} \\ &= 2870 + 630 \\ &= 3500\end{aligned}$$

3. Find the sum of series  $1 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot 4 + 3 \cdot 5 + \dots + n(n+2)$ .



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k=1}^n k(k+2) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n k^2 + 2k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n k^2 + 2 \sum_{k=1}^n k \\ &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} + 2 \cdot \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \\ &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} + n(n+1) \\ &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1) + 6n(n+1)}{6} \\ &= \frac{n(n+1)(2n+7)}{6} \end{aligned}$$

## 12.4.2 Exercise 12.4

1. Find the sum of the following series.

(a)  $\sum k = 1^8 5k^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^8 5k^2 &= 5 \sum_{k=1}^8 k^2 \\ &= 5 \cdot \frac{8(8+1)(2 \cdot 8 + 1)}{6} \\ &= 5 \cdot \frac{8 \cdot 9 \cdot 17}{6} \\ &= 5 \cdot \frac{1368}{6} \\ &= 5 \cdot 204 \\ &= 1020 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $\sum_{k=1}^9 k^3$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^9 k^3 &= \left[ \frac{9(9+1)}{2} \right]^2 \\ &= 45^2 \\ &= 2025 \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $\sum_{n=1}^{10} (3n-5)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{10} (3n-5) &= 3 \sum_{n=1}^{10} n - 5 \sum_{n=1}^{10} 1 \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{10(10+1)}{2} - 5 \cdot 10 \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{10 \cdot 11}{2} - 5 \cdot 10 \\ &= 3 \cdot 55 - 50 \\ &= 3 \cdot 5 - 50 \\ &= 165 - 50 \\ &= 115 \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $\sum_{k=3}^6 2k^3$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=3}^6 2k^3 &= 2 \sum_{k=3}^6 k^3 \\ &= 2 \left( \sum_{k=1}^6 k^3 - \sum_{k=1}^2 k^3 \right) \\ &= 2 \left\{ \left[ \frac{6(6+1)}{2} \right]^2 - \left[ \frac{2(2+1)}{2} \right]^2 \right\} \\ &= 2(21^2 - 3^2) \\ &= 2(441 - 9) \\ &= 2 \cdot 432 \\ &= 864 \end{aligned}$$

(e)  $\sum_{k=6}^{10} (2k^2 + 3)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=6}^{10} (2k^2 + 3) &= 2 \sum_{k=6}^{10} k^2 + 3 \sum_{k=6}^{10} 1 \\ &= 2 \left( \sum_{k=1}^{10} k^2 - \sum_{k=1}^5 k^2 \right) + 3 \cdot (10 - 5) \\ &= 2 \cdot \left[ \frac{10 \cdot 11 \cdot 21}{6} - \frac{5 \cdot 6 \cdot 11}{6} \right] + 3 \cdot 5 \\ &= 2 \cdot \left[ \frac{2310}{6} - \frac{330}{6} \right] + 3 \cdot 5 \\ &= 2 \cdot \frac{1980}{6} + 3 \cdot 5 \\ &= 2 \cdot 330 + 3 \cdot 5 \\ &= 660 + 15 \\ &= 675 \end{aligned}$$

(f)  $\sum_{n=11}^{15} (n^2 + 2n)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n=11}^{15} (n^2 + 2n) \\ &= \sum_{n=11}^{15} n^2 + 2 \sum_{n=11}^{15} n \\ &= \left[ \sum_{n=1}^{15} n^2 - \sum_{n=1}^{10} n^2 \right] \\ & \quad + 2 \left[ \sum_{n=1}^{15} n - \sum_{n=1}^{10} n \right] \\ &= \left[ \frac{15 \cdot 16 \cdot 31}{6} - \frac{10 \cdot 11 \cdot 21}{6} \right] \\ & \quad + 2 \left[ \frac{15 \cdot 16}{2} - \frac{10 \cdot 11}{2} \right] \\ &= 985 \end{aligned}$$

(g)  $\sum_{n=2}^6 n(n^2 - n + 1)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n=2}^6 n(n^2 - n + 1) \\ &= \sum_{n=2}^6 n^3 - \sum_{n=2}^6 n^2 + \sum_{n=2}^6 n \\ &= \left[ \sum_{n=1}^6 n^3 - \sum_{n=1}^1 n^3 \right] - \left[ \sum_{n=1}^6 n^2 - \sum_{n=1}^1 n^2 \right] \\ & \quad + \left[ \sum_{n=1}^6 n - \sum_{n=1}^1 n \right] \\ &= \left[ \left( \frac{6 \cdot 7}{2} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{1 \cdot 2}{2} \right)^2 \right] \\ & \quad - \left( \frac{6 \cdot 7 \cdot 13}{6} - \frac{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3}{6} \right) \\ & \quad + \left( \frac{6 \cdot 7}{2} - \frac{1 \cdot 2}{2} \right) \\ &= 21^2 - 1^2 - (7 \cdot 13 - 1) + (3 \cdot 7 - 1) \\ &= 440 - 90 + 20 \\ &= 370 \end{aligned}$$

2. Given that the  $n$ th term of a series is  $3n^2 + n$ , find the sum of the first 10 terms of the series.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{10} 3n^2 + n &= 3 \sum_{n=1}^{10} n^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{10} n \\ &= 3 \left( \frac{10 \cdot 11 \cdot 21}{6} \right) + \left( \frac{10 \cdot 11}{2} \right) \\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{2310}{6} + \frac{110}{2} \\ &= 3 \cdot 385 + 55 \\ &= 1210 \end{aligned}$$

3. Find the sum of first  $n$ th term of series  $1 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot 7 + 3 \cdot 11 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n=1}^n n \cdot (4n - 1) \\ &= 4 \sum_{n=1}^n n^2 - \sum_{n=1}^n n \\ &= 4 \left( \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} \right) - \left( \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right) \\ &= \frac{4n(n+1)(2n+1) - 3n(n+1)}{6} \\ &= \frac{n(n+1)(8n+1)}{6} \end{aligned}$$

4. Find the sum for the series  $1^2 + 3^2 + 5^2 + \dots + 15^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^8 (2n-1)^2 &= \sum_{n=1}^8 (4n^2 - 4n + 1) \\ &= 4 \sum_{n=1}^8 n^2 - 4 \sum_{n=1}^8 n + \sum_{n=1}^8 1 \\ &= 4 \left( \frac{8 \cdot 9 \cdot 17}{6} \right) - 4 \left( \frac{8 \cdot 9}{2} \right) + 8 \\ &= 4 \cdot 204 - 4 \cdot 36 + 8 \\ &= 816 - 144 + 8 \\ &= 680 \end{aligned}$$

## 12.5 Revision Exercise 12

1. Express the following series in form of  $\sum$ .

(a)  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{5}{6} + \dots + \frac{49}{50}$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = \frac{2 \cdot 1 - 1}{2 \cdot 1}$$

$$a_2 = \frac{2 \cdot 2 - 1}{2 \cdot 2}$$

$$a_3 = \frac{2 \cdot 3 - 1}{2 \cdot 3}$$

$\vdots$

$$a_{25} = \frac{2 \cdot 25 - 1}{2 \cdot 25}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{5}{6} + \dots + \frac{49}{50} = \sum_{n=1}^{25} \frac{2n-1}{2n}$$

(b)  $6 - 7 + 8 - 9 + \dots$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = (-1)^6 \cdot 6$$

$$a_2 = (-1)^7 \cdot 7$$

$$a_3 = (-1)^8 \cdot 8$$

$\vdots$

$$a_n = (-1)^n n \therefore 6 - 7 + 8 - 9 + \dots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n n$$

(c)  $2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 7 + 4 \cdot 9 + \dots + 15 \cdot 31$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = (1+1)(2 \cdot 1 + 3)$$

$$a_2 = (2+1)(2 \cdot 2 + 3)$$

$$a_3 = (3+1)(2 \cdot 3 + 3)$$

$\vdots$

$$a_{14} = (14+1)(2 \cdot 14 + 3)$$

$$\therefore 2 \cdot 5 + 3 \cdot 7 + 4 \cdot 9 + \dots + 15 \cdot 31$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^{14} (n+1)(2n+3)$$

2. Given a general formula  $a_n = \frac{3^n}{2n-3}$ , state the first 5 terms of the sequence.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = \frac{3^1}{2 \cdot 1 - 3} = -3$$

$$a_2 = \frac{3^2}{2 \cdot 2 - 3} = 9$$

$$a_3 = \frac{3^3}{2 \cdot 3 - 3} = 9$$

$$a_4 = \frac{3^4}{2 \cdot 4 - 3} = \frac{81}{5}$$

$$a_5 = \frac{3^5}{2 \cdot 5 - 3} = \frac{243}{7}$$

3. Express the series  $\sum_{k=1}^{10} (2k^2 - 3)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k=1}^{10} (2k^2 - 3) \\ &= (2 \cdot 1^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 2^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 3^2 - 3) \\ & \quad + (2 \cdot 4^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 5^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 6^2 - 3) \\ & \quad + (2 \cdot 7^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 8^2 - 3) + (2 \cdot 9^2 - 3) \\ & \quad + (2 \cdot 10^2 - 3) \\ &= -1 + 5 + 15 + 29 + 47 + 69 + 95 + 125 \\ & \quad + 159 + 197 \end{aligned}$$

4. State the first term, last term and the number of terms of the series  $\sum_{k=3}^7 (3^k - 2^k - k)$

**Sol.**

$$a_3 = 3^3 - 2^3 - 3 = 27 - 8 - 3 = 16$$

$$a_7 = 3^7 - 2^7 - 7 = 2187 - 128 - 7 = 2052$$

$$n = 5$$

5. Find the number of terms of the AP  $-4 - 2\frac{3}{4} - 112 - \frac{1}{4} + \dots + 16$

**Sol.**

$$a = -4$$

$$d = \frac{5}{4}$$

$$16 = -4 + (n-1)\frac{5}{4}$$

$$20 = \frac{5}{4}(n-1)$$

$$5n - 5 = 80$$

$$5n = 85$$

$$n = 17$$

6. If  $x+1$ ,  $2x+1$ ,  $x-3$  are the first 3 terms of AP, find:

- (a) The value of  $x$

**Sol.**

$$2x + 1 = \frac{x + 1 + x - 3}{2}$$

$$4x + 2 = 2x - 2$$

$$2x = -4$$

$$x = -2$$

- (b) Sum from the 10th term to the 20th term

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = -1$$

$$a_2 = -3$$

$$r = -2$$

$$S = S_{20} - S_9$$

$$= \frac{20}{2}(-2 + (20-1)(-2))$$

$$= \frac{9}{2}(-2 + (9-1)(-2))$$

$$= 10 \cdot (-40) - 9 \cdot (-9)$$

$$= -400 + 81$$

$$= -319$$

7. Find 4 numbers between 28 and -12 such that these 6 numbers form an AP.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 28 \\a_n &= -12 \\n &= 6 \\-12 &= 28 + 5d \\5d &= 40 \\d &= 8\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  These 4 numbers are  $-4, 4, 12, 20$

8. Find the sum of the following AP.

(a)  $7 + 11 + 15 + \dots$  up to the 10th term

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 7 \\d &= 4 \\n &= 10 \\S_{10} &= \frac{10}{2}(2 \cdot 7 + (10 - 1)4) \\&= 5(14 + 36) \\&= 250\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $20 + 18\frac{1}{2} + 17 + \dots$  up to the 16th term

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 20 \\d &= -\frac{3}{2} \\n &= 16 \\S_{16} &= \frac{16}{2}(2 \cdot 20 + (16 - 1)(-\frac{3}{2})) \\&= 8(40 - \frac{45}{2}) \\&= 8 \cdot \frac{35}{2} \\&= 140\end{aligned}$$

(c)  $2\sqrt{2} + 3\sqrt{2} + 4\sqrt{2} + \dots + 13\sqrt{2}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 2\sqrt{2} \\d &= \sqrt{2} \\n &= 12 \\S_{12} &= \frac{12}{2}(2 \cdot 2\sqrt{2} + (12 - 1)\sqrt{2}) \\&= 6(4\sqrt{2} + 11\sqrt{2}) \\&= 6 \cdot 15\sqrt{2} \\&= 90\sqrt{2}\end{aligned}$$

9. Given an AP which the sum of the first  $n$  terms  $S_n = n(1 + 2n)$ , find:

(a) First term

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{n}{2}(2a + (n - 1)d) &= n(1 + 2n) \\n(2a + (n - 1)d) &= 2n(1 + 2n) \\2an + dn^2 - dn &= 2n - 4n^2 \\(2a - d)n + dn^2 &= 2n - 4n^2\end{aligned}$$

Comparing both sides,

$$\begin{aligned}a &= 3 \\d &= 4\end{aligned}$$

(b) Common Difference

**Sol.**

According to the sol. of (a),  
 $d = 4$

(c) Sum of the first 20 terms.

**Sol.**

According to the sol. of (a),

$$\begin{aligned}a &= 3 \\d &= 4 \\n &= 20 \\S_{20} &= \frac{20}{2}(2 \cdot 3 + (20 - 1)4) \\&= 10(6 + 76) \\&= 10 \cdot 82 \\&= 820\end{aligned}$$

10. Given an AP  $33 + 27 + 21 + \dots$

(a) If the first sum of the first  $n$  terms is 105, find the value of  $n$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}a_1 &= 33 \\d &= -6 \\105 &= \frac{n}{2}(2 \cdot 33 + (n - 1) \cdot (-6)) \\210 &= n(66 - (n - 1)6) \\35 &= 11n - n^2 + n \\n^2 - 12n + 35 &= 0 \\(n - 7)(n - 5) &= 0 \\n &= 7 \text{ or } n = 5\end{aligned}$$

(b) If the sum of the first  $n$  terms is negative value, find the minimum value of  $n$ .

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 33$$

$$d = -6$$

$$\frac{n}{2}(2 \cdot 33 + (n-1) \cdot (-6)) < 0$$

$$n(66 - 6n + 6) < 0$$

$$12n - n^2 < 0$$

$$n(12 - n) < 0$$

$$n > 12$$

$\therefore$  The minimum value of  $n$  is 13

11. Find the sum of the numbers between 150 and 300 that are multiple of both 5 and 3.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 165$$

$$a_n = 285$$

$$d = 15$$

$$285 = 165 + (n-1) \cdot 15$$

$$8 = n - 1$$

$$n = 9$$

$$S_9 = \frac{9}{2}(2 \cdot 165 + (9-1) \cdot 15)$$

$$= \frac{9}{2} \cdot 450$$

$$= 2025$$

12. Find the sum of all the numbers between 100 and 200 that can be divided by 2 or 3.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 102$$

$$a_n = 198$$

When  $d = 2$ ,

$$198 = 102 + (n-1) \cdot 2$$

$$48 = n - 1$$

$$n = 49$$

$$S_{49} = \frac{49}{2}(2 \cdot 102 + (49-1) \cdot 2)$$

$$= \frac{49}{2} \cdot (204 + 96)$$

$$= 7350$$

When  $d = 3$ ,

$$198 = 102 + (n-1) \cdot 3$$

$$32 = n - 1$$

$$n = 33$$

$$S_{33} = \frac{33}{2}(2 \cdot 102 + (33-1) \cdot 3)$$

$$= \frac{33}{2} \cdot (204 + 96)$$

$$= 4950$$

When  $d = 6$ ,

$$198 = 102 + (n-1) \cdot 6$$

$$16 = n - 1$$

$$n = 17$$

$$S_{17} = \frac{17}{2}(2 \cdot 102 + (17-1) \cdot 6)$$

$$= \frac{17}{2} \cdot (204 + 96)$$

$$= 2550$$

$$\therefore S = 7350 + 4950 - 2550$$

$$= 9750$$

13. Find the sum of the numbers between 50 and 100 that cannot be divided by 5.

**Sol.**

When  $d = 1$ ,

$$a_1 = 51$$

$$a_n = 99$$

$$99 = 51 + (n - 1) \cdot 1$$

$$48 = n - 1$$

$$n = 49$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_{49} &= \frac{49}{2}(2 \cdot 51 + (49 - 1) \cdot 1) \\ &= \frac{49}{2} \cdot (102 + 48) \\ &= 3675 \end{aligned}$$

When  $d = 5$ ,

$$a_1 = 55$$

$$a_n = 95$$

$$95 = 55 + (n - 1) \cdot 5$$

$$8 = n - 1$$

$$n = 9$$

$$\begin{aligned} S_9 &= \frac{9}{2}(2 \cdot 55 + (9 - 1) \cdot 5) \\ &= \frac{9}{2} \cdot (110 + 40) \\ &= 675 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore S &= 3675 - 675 \\ &= 3000 \end{aligned}$$

14. Which term is the first negative term of the AP  $20 + 16\frac{1}{4} + 12\frac{1}{2} + \dots$ ?

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 20$$

$$d = -\frac{15}{4}$$

$$a_n = 20 - (n - 1) \cdot \frac{15}{4} < 0$$

$$80 - 15(n - 1) < 0$$

$$16 - 3n + 3 < 0$$

$$3n > 19$$

$$n > 6\frac{1}{3}$$

$\therefore$  The first negative term is 7

15. Three numbers are in AP, their sum is 15 while the sum of the square of these numbers is 83. Find these three numbers.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3 = 15$$

$$a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 = 83$$

$$a_2 - a_1 = a_3 - a_2$$

$$a_1 + a_3 = 2a_2$$

$$3a_2 = 15$$

$$a_2 = 5$$

$$a_3 = 10 - a_1$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_1^2 + a_3^2 &= 83 - 25 \\ &= 58 \end{aligned}$$

$$a_1^2 + (10 - a_1)^2 = 58$$

$$a_1^2 + 100 - 20a_1 + a_1^2 = 58$$

$$2a_1^2 - 20a_1 + 100 = 58$$

$$2a_1^2 - 20a_1 + 42 = 0$$

$$a_1^2 - 10a_1 + 21 = 0$$

$$(a_1 - 7)(a_1 - 3) = 0$$

$$a_1 = 7 \text{ or } a_1 = 3$$

$\therefore$  The three numbers are 7, 5, 3

16. Find the sum of the series  $18^2 - 17^2 + 16^2 - 15^2 + 14^2 - 13^2 + \dots + 2^2 - 1^2$

**Sol.**

$$18^2 - 17^2 + 16^2 - 15^2 + \dots + 2^2 - 1^2$$

$$= (18^2 - 17^2) + (16^2 - 15^2) + \dots + (2^2 - 1^2)$$

$$= ((2 \cdot 9)^2 - (2 \cdot 9 - 1)^2) + ((2 \cdot 8)^2 - (2 \cdot 8 - 1)^2)$$

$$+ \dots + ((2 \cdot 1)^2 - (2 \cdot 1 - 1)^2)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^9 [(2n)^2 - (2n - 1)^2]$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^9 (4n - 1)$$

$$= 4 \sum_{n=1}^9 n - \sum_{n=1}^9 1$$

$$= 4 \cdot \frac{9 \cdot 10}{2} - 9$$

$$= 180 - 9$$

$$= 171$$

17. State the general formula of the series  $20, -10, 5, -2\frac{1}{2}, \dots$

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = 20$$

$$r = -\frac{1}{2}$$

$$a_n = 20\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1}$$

18. Given three integers  $x-3$ ,  $x+1$ ,  $4x-2$  that are in GP. If the sum of this GP is  $S$ , common ratio is  $r$ , find the value of  $S+r$ .

**Sol.**

$$x+1 = \pm\sqrt{(x-3)(4x-2)}$$

$$x^2 + 2x + 1 = 4x^2 - 14x + 6$$

$$3x^2 - 16x + 5 = 0$$

$$(3x-1)(x-5) = 0$$

$$x = 5 \text{ or } x = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$a_1 = x - 3 = 5 - 3 = 2$$

$$a_2 = x + 1 = 5 + 1 = 6$$

$$a_3 = 4x - 2 = 4(5) - 2 = 18$$

$$S = a_1 + a_2 + a_3$$

$$= 2 + 6 + 18$$

$$= 26$$

$$r = \frac{a_3}{a_2} = \frac{18}{6} = 3$$

$$\therefore S + r = 26 + 3$$

$$= 29$$

19. Find the geometric mean of  $\frac{1}{3}$  and  $\frac{1}{5}$

**Sol.**

$$G = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{5}}$$

$$= \pm\sqrt{\frac{1}{15}}$$

$$= \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{15}}$$

$$= \pm\frac{\sqrt{15}}{15}$$

20. Find 5 numbers between  $-\frac{1}{4}$  and  $-\frac{1}{256}$  such that these 7 numbers form a GP.

**Sol.**

$$a_1 = -\frac{1}{4}$$

$$n = 7$$

$$-\frac{1}{256} = -\frac{1}{4}r^6$$

$$\frac{1}{64} = r^6$$

$$\left(\pm\frac{1}{2}\right)^6 = r^6$$

$$r = \pm\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{When } r = \frac{1}{2},$$

These 5 numbers are

$$\frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{32}, \frac{1}{64}, \frac{1}{128}$$

$$\text{When } r = -\frac{1}{2},$$

These 5 numbers are

$$\frac{1}{8}, -\frac{1}{16}, \frac{1}{32}, -\frac{1}{64}, \frac{1}{128}$$

21. Find the sum of the series  $\sum_{n=5}^{15} n^2(3n+1)$

**Sol.**

$$\sum_{n=5}^{15} n^2(3n+1) = \sum_{n=5}^{15} n^3 + \sum_{n=5}^{15} 3n^2$$

$$= 3 \sum_{n=5}^{15} n^3 + \sum_{n=5}^{15} n^2$$

$$= 3 \left[ \sum_{n=1}^{15} n^3 - \sum_{n=1}^4 n^3 \right]$$

$$+ \left[ \sum_{n=1}^{15} n^2 - \sum_{n=1}^4 n^2 \right]$$

$$= 3 \left[ \left( \frac{15 \cdot 16}{2} \right)^2 - \left( \frac{4 \cdot 5}{2} \right)^2 \right]$$

$$+ \left[ \frac{15 \cdot 16 \cdot 31}{6} - \frac{4 \cdot 5 \cdot 9}{6} \right]$$

$$= 3 \left[ (15 \cdot 8)^2 - (2 \cdot 5)^2 \right]$$

$$+ 1240 - 30$$

$$= 3(14400 - 100) + 1210$$

$$= 42900 + 1210$$

$$= 44110$$

22. Find the sum of the series  $5^2 + 7^2 + 9^2 + \dots + 25^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}& \sum_{n=1}^{11} (2n+3)^2 \\&= \sum_{n=1}^{11} 4n^2 + 12n + 9 \\&= 4 \sum_{n=1}^{11} n^2 + 12 \sum_{n=1}^{11} n + 11 \\&= 4 \left[ \frac{11 \cdot 12 \cdot 23}{6} \right] + 12 \left[ \frac{11 \cdot 12}{2} \right] + 99 \\&= 2024 + 792 + 99 \\&= 2915\end{aligned}$$

23. Find the sum of the series  $2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 12 + 4 \cdot 27 + \dots + (n+1) \cdot 3n^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}& \sum_{n=1}^n (n+1)3n^2 \\&= \sum_{n=1}^n 3n^3 + \sum_{n=1}^n 3n^2 \\&= 3 \left[ \sum_{n=1}^n n^3 + \sum_{n=1}^n n^2 \right] \\&= 3 \left[ \left( \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \right)^2 + \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} \right] \\&= 3 \left[ \frac{n^2(n+1)^2}{4} + \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} \right] \\&= 3 \left[ \frac{3n^2(n+1)^2 + 2n(n+1)(2n+1)}{12} \right] \\&= \frac{n(n+1) [3n^2 + 3n + 4n + 2]}{4} \\&= \frac{n(n+1) [3n^2 + 7n + 2]}{4} \\&= \frac{n(n+1)(n+2)(3n+1)}{4}\end{aligned}$$



## Chapter 13

# System of Equations

### 13.1 System of Equations with Two Variables

#### 13.1.1 Practice 1

Solve the following system of equations.

1.

$$\begin{cases} 2x - 3y = 11 \\ xy = -5 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x - 3y = 11 & (1) \\ xy = -5 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(2) \Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{x} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (1)} \Rightarrow 2x - \frac{15}{x} = 11$$

$$2x^2 - 15 = 11x$$

$$2x^2 - 11x - 15 = 0$$

$$(2x - 5)(x - 3) = 0$$

$$x = 3 \text{ or } x = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 3 \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{3}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = \frac{5}{2} \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{\frac{5}{2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{\frac{5}{2}}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -2$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = 3 \\ y = -\frac{5}{3} \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = \frac{5}{2} \\ y = -2 \end{cases}$$

2.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = 5 \\ x^2 - 2xy = 8 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = 5 & (1) \\ x^2 - 2xy = 8 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$3(1) \Rightarrow y = 5 - 3x \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow x^2 - 2x(5 - 3x) = 8$$

$$x^2 - 10x + 6x^2 = 8$$

$$7x^2 - 10x + 8 = 0$$

$$(7x + 4)(x - 2) = 0$$

$$x = -\frac{4}{7} \text{ or } x = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -\frac{4}{7} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 5 - 3\left(-\frac{4}{7}\right)$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{47}{7}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = -1$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -\frac{4}{7} \\ y = \frac{47}{7} \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = -1 \end{cases}$$

#### 13.1.2 Exercise 13.1

Solve the following system of equations.

1.

$$\begin{cases} x - y = 1 \\ xy = 6 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x - y = 1 & (1) \\ xy = 6 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = x - 1 \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow x(x - 1) = 6$$

$$x^2 - x = 6$$

$$x^2 - x - 6 = 0$$

$$(x + 2)(x - 3) = 0$$

$$x = -2 \text{ or } x = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -2 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = -2 - 1$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 3 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 3 - 1$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 2$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -2 \\ y = -3 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 3 \\ y = 2 \end{cases}$$

2.

$$\begin{cases} 3x - y = 4 \\ xy = 4 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 3x - y = 4 & (1) \\ xy = 4 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = 3x - 4 \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow x(3x - 4) = 4$$

$$3x^2 - 4x = 4$$

$$3x^2 - 4x - 4 = 0$$

$$(3x + 2)(x - 2) = 0$$

$$x = -\frac{2}{3} \text{ or } x = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -\frac{2}{3} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 3\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) - 4$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -6$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 3(2) - 4$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 2$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -\frac{2}{3} \\ y = -6 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = 2 \end{cases}$$

3.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 4y = -39 \\ xy = 30 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 4y = -39 & (1) \\ xy = 30 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(2) \Rightarrow y = \frac{30}{x} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (1)} \Rightarrow 3x + 4\frac{30}{x} = -39$$

$$3x^2 + 120 = -39x$$

$$3x^2 + 39x + 120 = 0$$

$$x^2 + 13x + 40 = 0$$

$$(x + 5)(x + 8) = 0$$

$$x = -5 \text{ or } x = -8$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -5 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{30}{-5} - 39$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -6$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -8 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{30}{-8} - 39$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -\frac{15}{4}$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -5 \\ y = -6 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = -8 \\ y = -\frac{15}{4} \end{cases}$$

4.

$$\begin{cases} y = 2x + 3 \\ y = x^2 - 2x + 1 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} y = 2x + 3 & (1) \\ y = x^2 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) = (2) \Rightarrow 2x + 3 = x^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 - 2x - 3 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (x + 1)(x - 3) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = -1 \text{ or } x = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 2(-1) + 3$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 3 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 2(3) + 3$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 9$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -1 \\ y = 1 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 3 \\ y = 9 \end{cases}$$

5.

$$\begin{cases} x - y = 1 \\ x^2 + y^2 = 25 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x - y = 1 & (1) \\ x^2 + y^2 = 25 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow x = y + 1 \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow (y + 1)^2 + y^2 = 25$$

$$\Rightarrow y^2 + 2y + 1 + y^2 = 25$$

$$\Rightarrow 2y^2 + 2y = 24$$

$$\Rightarrow y^2 + y = 12$$

$$\Rightarrow y^2 + y - 12 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (y + 4)(y - 3) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -4 \text{ or } y = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -4 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = -4 + 1$$

$$\Rightarrow x = -3$$

$$\text{Sub } y = 3 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 3 + 1$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 4$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -3 \\ y = -4 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 4 \\ y = 3 \end{cases}$$

6.

$$\begin{cases} 5x - y = 3 \\ y^2 - 6x^2 = 25 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 5x - y = 3 & (1) \\ y^2 - 6x^2 = 25 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = 5x - 3 \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow (5x - 3)^2 - 6x^2 = 25$$

$$\Rightarrow 25x^2 - 30x + 9$$

$$- 6x^2 = 25$$

$$\Rightarrow 19x^2 - 30x + 16 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (19x + 8)(x - 2) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = -\frac{8}{19} \text{ or } x = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -\frac{8}{19} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 5\left(-\frac{8}{19}\right) - 3$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -\frac{97}{19}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = 7$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -\frac{8}{19} \\ y = -\frac{97}{19} \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = 7 \end{cases}$$

7.

$$\begin{cases} x + y = 3 \\ (x + 2)(y + 3) = 12 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x + y = 3 & (1) \\ (x + 2)(y + 3) = 12 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow x = 3 - y \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow (3 - y + 2)(y + 3) = 12$$

$$\Rightarrow (5 - y)(y + 3) = 12$$

$$\Rightarrow 5y + 15 - y^2 - 3y = 12$$

$$\Rightarrow 2y - y^2 = -3$$

$$\Rightarrow y^2 - 2y - 3 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (y + 1)(y - 3) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -1 \text{ or } y = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 4$$

$$\text{Sub } y = 3 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 0$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = 4 \\ y = -1 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 0 \\ y = 3 \end{cases}$$

8.

$$\begin{cases} 5x - 6y = -1 \\ 25x^2 + 36y^2 = 61 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 5x - 6y = -1 & (1) \\ 25x^2 + 36y^2 = 61 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = \frac{5x + 1}{6} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2)} \Rightarrow 25x^2 + 36\left(\frac{5x + 1}{6}\right)^2$$

$$= 61$$

$$\Rightarrow 25x^2 + 36\left(\frac{5x + 1}{6}\right)^2$$

$$+ 36 = 61$$

$$\Rightarrow 25x^2 + 25x^2 + 10x$$

$$+ 1 = 61$$

$$\Rightarrow 50x^2 + 10x = 60$$

$$\Rightarrow 5x^2 + x - 6 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (5x + 6)(x - 1) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = -\frac{6}{5} \text{ or } x = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -\frac{6}{5} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{5\left(-\frac{6}{5}\right) + 1}{6}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{6}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{5(1) + 1}{6}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{6}{6}$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 1$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -\frac{6}{5} \\ y = -\frac{5}{6} \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = 1 \\ y = 1 \end{cases}$$

9.

$$\begin{cases} x + 4y = 5 \\ 2x^2 + 21xy + 27y^2 = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x + 4y = 5 & (1) \\ 2x^2 + 21xy + 27y^2 = 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) &\Rightarrow x = 5 - 4y & (3) \\
 \text{Sub (3) into (2)} &\Rightarrow 2(5 - 4y)^2 + 21(5 - 4y)y \\
 &\quad + 27y^2 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow 2(25 - 40y + 16y^2) \\
 &\quad + 105y - 84y^2 + 27y^2 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow 50 - 80y + 32y^2 + 105y \\
 &\quad - 57y^2 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow 25y^2 - 25y - 50 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow y^2 - y - 2 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow (y + 1)(y - 2) = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow y = -1 \text{ or } y = 2 \\
 \text{Sub } y = -1 \text{ into (1)} &\Rightarrow x = 5 - 4(-1) = 9 \\
 \text{Sub } y = 2 \text{ into (1)} &\Rightarrow x = 5 - 4(2) = -3 \\
 \\
 \therefore &\begin{cases} x = 9 \\ y = -1 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = -3 \\ y = 2 \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) &\Rightarrow 10x - 3y = 25 & (3) \\
 (2) &\Rightarrow x = \frac{2y + 3}{y - 2} & (4) \\
 \text{Sub (4) into (3)} &\Rightarrow 10\left(\frac{2y + 3}{y - 2}\right) - 3y = 25 \\
 &\Rightarrow 10(2y + 3) - 3y(y - 2) \\
 &\quad = 25(y - 2) \\
 &\Rightarrow 20y + 30 - 3y^2 + 6y \\
 &\quad = 25y - 50 \\
 &\Rightarrow 3y^2 - y - 80 = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow (y + 5)(3y - 16) = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow y = -5 \text{ or } y = \frac{16}{3} \\
 \text{Sub } y = -5 \text{ into (1)} &\Rightarrow 10x - 3(-5) = 25 \\
 &\Rightarrow 10x + 15 = 25 \\
 &\Rightarrow 10x = 10 \\
 &\Rightarrow x = 1 \\
 \text{Sub } y = \frac{16}{3} \text{ into (1)} &\Rightarrow 10x - 3\left(\frac{16}{3}\right) = 25 \\
 &\Rightarrow 10x = 41 \\
 &\Rightarrow x = \frac{41}{10} \\
 \\
 \therefore &\begin{cases} x = 1 \\ y = -5 \end{cases} \text{ or } \begin{cases} x = \frac{41}{10} \\ y = \frac{16}{3} \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

10.

$$\begin{cases} \frac{x}{3} - \frac{y}{10} = \frac{5}{6} \\ x(y - 2) = 2y + 3 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) \quad &\begin{cases} \frac{x}{3} - \frac{y}{10} = \frac{5}{6} \\ x(y - 2) = 2y + 3 \end{cases} \\
 (2) \quad &
 \end{aligned}$$

## 13.2 System of Equations with Three Variables

### 13.2.1 Practice 2

Solve the system of equation

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y - z = -5 \\ 2x - y + z = 6 \\ x - y - 3z = -3 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) \quad &\begin{cases} x + 2y - z = -5 \\ 2x - y + z = 6 \\ x - y - 3z = -3 \end{cases} \\
 (2) \quad &
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow 3x + 6y - 3z = -15 & (4) \\
 (2) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow 6x - 3y + 3z = 18 & (5) \\
 (3) + (5) &\Rightarrow 7x - 4y = 15 & (6) \\
 (4) + (5) &\Rightarrow 9x + 3y = 3 & (7) \\
 (6) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow 21x - 12y = 45 & (8) \\
 (7) \cdot 4 &\Rightarrow 36x + 12y = 12 & (9) \\
 (8) + (9) &\Rightarrow 57x = 57 & (10)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 1 \text{ into (7)} \Rightarrow -4y = 8$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -2$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -2 \text{ and } x = 1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow -z = -2$$

$$\Rightarrow z = 2$$

$$\therefore x = 1, y = -2, z = 2$$

### 13.2.2 Exercise 13.2

Solve the following system of equations.

1.

$$\begin{cases}
 x + y - z = 1 \\
 2x - 3y + z = 0 \\
 2x + y + 2z = 5
 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
 x + y - z = 1 & (1) \\
 2x - 3y + z = 0 & (2) \\
 2x + y + 2z = 5 & (3)
 \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \cdot 2 \Rightarrow 2x + 2y - 2z = 2 \quad (4)$$

$$(4) - (3) \Rightarrow y - 4z = -3 \quad (5)$$

$$(3) - (2) \Rightarrow 4y + z = 5 \quad (6)$$

$$(5) \cdot 4 \Rightarrow 4y - 16z = -12 \quad (7)$$

$$(6) - (7) \Rightarrow 17z = 17$$

$$\Rightarrow z = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } z = 1 \text{ into (5)} \Rightarrow y = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } y = 1 \text{ and } z = 1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 1$$

$$\therefore x = 1, y = 1, z = 1$$

2.

$$\begin{cases}
 x - 2y = 5 \\
 2x + y - 3z = 8 \\
 x + 4y - z = 0
 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
 x - 2y = 5 & (1) \\
 2x + y - 3z = 8 & (2) \\
 x + 4y - z = 0 & (3)
 \end{cases}$$

$$(3) \cdot 3 \Rightarrow 3x + 12y - 3z = 0 \quad (4)$$

$$(4) - (2) \Rightarrow x + 11y = -8 \quad (5)$$

$$(5) - (1) \Rightarrow 13y = -13$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -1$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -1 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x + 2 = 5$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 3$$

$$\text{and } y = -1 \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow -3z = 3$$

$$\Rightarrow z = -1$$

$$\therefore x = 3, y = -1, z = -1$$

3.

$$\begin{cases}
 x + y = z - 5 \\
 y + z = x - 3 \\
 z + x = y + 1
 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
 x + y = z - 5 & (1) \\
 y + z = x - 3 & (2) \\
 z + x = y + 1 & (3)
 \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow x + y - z = -5 \quad (4)$$

$$(2) \Rightarrow -x + y + z = -3 \quad (5)$$

$$(3) \Rightarrow x - y + z = 1 \quad (6)$$

$$(4) + (5) \Rightarrow 2y = -8$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -4$$

$$(5) + (6) \Rightarrow 2z = -2$$

$$\Rightarrow z = -1$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -4$$

$$\text{and } z = -1 \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow x - 3 = -5$$

$$\Rightarrow x = -2$$

$$\therefore x = -2, y = -4, z = -1$$

4.

$$\begin{cases}
 x + 4y + 2z = 4 \\
 2x - 2y + z = 4 \\
 x - 2y + 3z = 3
 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
 x + 4y + 2z = 4 & (1) \\
 2x - 2y + z = 4 & (2) \\
 x - 2y + 3z = 3 & (3)
 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(1) \cdot 2 &\Rightarrow 2x + 8y + 4z = 8 & (4) \\
(3) \cdot 2 &\Rightarrow 2x - 4y + 6z = 6 & (5) \\
(4) - (2) &\Rightarrow 10y + 3z = 4 & (6) \\
(5) - (4) &\Rightarrow -12y + 2z = -2 & (7) \\
(6) \cdot 2 &\Rightarrow 20y + 6z = 8 & (8) \\
(7) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow -36y + 6z = -6 & (9)
\end{aligned}$$

$$(8) - (9) \Rightarrow 56y = 14$$

$$\Rightarrow y = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\text{Sub } y = \frac{1}{4} \text{ into (6)} \Rightarrow 6z = 3$$

$$\Rightarrow z = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{Sub } y = \frac{1}{4} \text{ and } z = \frac{1}{2} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x + 1 + 1 = 4$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 2$$

$$\therefore x = 2, y = \frac{1}{4}, z = \frac{1}{2}$$

5.

$$\begin{cases}
x - y - z = 0 \\
3x + 2y = 13 \\
y - 3z = -1
\end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
x - y - z = 0 & (1) \\
3x + 2y = 13 & (2) \\
y - 3z = -1 & (3)
\end{cases}$$

$$(3) \Rightarrow y = 3z - 1 \quad (4)$$

$$\text{Sub (4) into (1)} \Rightarrow x - (3z - 1) - z = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x - 4z = -1 \quad (5)$$

$$\text{Sub (4) into (2)} \Rightarrow 3x + 2(3z - 1) = 13$$

$$\Rightarrow 3x + 6z = 15 \quad (6)$$

$$(5) \cdot 3 \Rightarrow 3x - 12z = -3 \quad (7)$$

$$(6) - (7) \Rightarrow 18z = 18$$

$$\Rightarrow z = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } z = 1 \text{ into (4)} \Rightarrow y = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } z = 1 \text{ into (5)} \Rightarrow x - 4 = -1$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 3$$

$$\therefore x = 3, y = 2, z = 1$$

6.

$$\begin{cases}
2x + 2y - z = -1 \\
x + 3y + z = -8 \\
3x - 2y + 3z = 9
\end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
2x + 2y - z = -1 & (1) \\
x + 3y + z = -8 & (2) \\
3x - 2y + 3z = 9 & (3)
\end{cases}$$

$$(1) \cdot 3 \Rightarrow 6x + 6y - 3z = -3 \quad (4)$$

$$(2) \cdot 3 \Rightarrow 3x + 9y + 3z = -24 \quad (5)$$

$$(3) + (4) \Rightarrow 9x + 4y = 6 \quad (6)$$

$$(4) + (5) \Rightarrow 9x + 15y = -27 \quad (7)$$

$$(7) - (6) \Rightarrow 11y = -33$$

$$\Rightarrow y = -3$$

$$\text{Sub } y = -3 \text{ into (6)} \Rightarrow 9x = 18$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2$$

$$\text{and } y = -3 \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow -7 + z = -8$$

$$\Rightarrow z = -1$$

$$\therefore x = 2, y = -3, z = -1$$

7.

$$\begin{cases}
\frac{3}{x} + \frac{1}{y} + \frac{4}{z} = 0 \\
\frac{1}{x} + \frac{4}{y} - \frac{2}{z} = 4 \\
\frac{2}{x} - \frac{3}{y} - \frac{1}{z} = -11
\end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases}
\frac{3}{x} + \frac{1}{y} + \frac{4}{z} = 0 & (1) \\
\frac{1}{x} + \frac{4}{y} - \frac{2}{z} = 4 & (2) \\
\frac{2}{x} - \frac{3}{y} - \frac{1}{z} = -11 & (3)
\end{cases}$$

$$\text{Let } u = \frac{1}{x}, v = \frac{1}{y}, w = \frac{1}{z}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow 3u + v + 4w = 0 \quad (4)$$

$$(2) \Rightarrow u + 4v - 2w = 4 \quad (5)$$

$$(3) \Rightarrow 2u - 3v - w = -11 \quad (6)$$

$$(5) \cdot 2 \Rightarrow 2u + 8v - 4w = 8 \quad (7)$$

$$(6) \cdot 4 \Rightarrow 8u - 12v - 4w = -44 \quad (8)$$

$$(4) + (7) \Rightarrow 5u + 9v = 8 \quad (9)$$

$$(4) + (8) \Rightarrow 11u - 11v = -44 \quad (10)$$

$$\Rightarrow u - v = -4$$

$$(10) \cdot 5 \Rightarrow 5u - 5v = -20 \quad (11)$$

$$(9) - (11) \Rightarrow 14v = 28 \quad (12)$$

$$\Rightarrow v = 2$$

$$\text{Sub } v = 2 \text{ into (10)} \Rightarrow u = -2$$

$$\text{Sub } u = -2$$

$$\text{and } v = 2 \text{ into (4)} \Rightarrow -4 + 4w = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow w = 1$$

$$\therefore u = -2, v = 2, w = 1$$

$$\therefore x = -\frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{1}{2}, z = 1$$

### 13.3 Revision Exercise 13

Solve the following system of equations.

1.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 4y = 24 \\ xy = 12 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 4y = 24 & (1) \\ xy = 12 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(2) \Rightarrow y = \frac{12}{x} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (1)} \Rightarrow 3x + 4\left(\frac{12}{x}\right) = 24$$

$$\Rightarrow 3x^2 + 48 = 24x$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 - 8x + 16 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (x - 4)^2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 4, x = -4$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 4 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{12}{4} = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -4 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{12}{-4} = -3$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = 4 \\ y = 3 \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{cases} x = -4 \\ y = -3 \end{cases}$$

2.

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 5 \\ 5x^2 + 4y^2 + 12x = 29 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 5 & (1) \\ 5x^2 + 4y^2 + 12x = 29 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow x = 5 - 2y \quad (3)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sub (3) into (2)} &\Rightarrow 5(5 - 2y)^2 + 4y^2 \\ &\quad + 12(5 - 2y) = 29 \\ &\Rightarrow 5(25 - 20y + 4y^2) \\ &\quad + 4y^2 + 60 - 24y = 29 \\ &\Rightarrow 125 - 100y + 20y^2 \\ &\quad + 4y^2 + 60 - 24y = 29 \\ &\Rightarrow 24y^2 + 124y + 156 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow 6y^2 + 31y + 39 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow (y - 3)(6y - 13) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow y = 3, y = \frac{13}{6} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Sub } y = 3 \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 5 - 2(3) = -1$$

$$\text{Sub } y = \frac{13}{6} \text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow x = 5 - 2\left(\frac{13}{6}\right) = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -1 \\ y = 3 \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{cases} x = \frac{2}{3} \\ y = \frac{13}{6} \end{cases}$$

3.

$$\begin{cases} 2x + y = 7 \\ x^2 - xy + y^2 = 7 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x + y = 7 & (1) \\ x^2 - xy + y^2 = 7 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = 7 - 2x$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sub (3) into (2)} &\Rightarrow x^2 - x(7 - 2x) \\ &\quad + (7 - 2x)^2 = 7 \\ &\Rightarrow x^2 - 7x + 2x^2 - 28x \\ &\quad + 49 + 4x^2 = 7 \\ &\Rightarrow 7x^2 - 35x + 42 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow (x - 2)(x - 3) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow x = 2, x = 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = 7 - 2(2) = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 3 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = 7 - 2(3) = 1$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = 3 \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{cases} x = 3 \\ y = 1 \end{cases}$$

4.

$$\begin{cases} 2x + 3y = 7 \\ x^2 + xy + y^2 = 7 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x + 3y = 7 & (1) \\ x^2 + xy + y^2 = 7 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \Rightarrow y = \frac{7 - 2x}{3} \quad (3)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sub (3) into (2)} &\Rightarrow x^2 + x\left(\frac{7 - 2x}{3}\right) \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{7 - 2x}{3}\right)^2 = 7 \\ &\Rightarrow x^2 + \frac{7x - 2x^2}{3} \\ &\quad + \frac{49 - 28x + 4x^2}{9} = 7 \\ &\Rightarrow 9x^2 + 21x - 6x^2 + 49 \\ &\quad - 28x + 4x^2 = 63 \\ &\Rightarrow 7x^2 - 7x - 14 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow x^2 - x - 2 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow (x + 1)(x - 2) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow x = -1, x = 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Sub } x = -1 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{7 - 2(-1)}{3} = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 2 \text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow y = \frac{7 - 2(2)}{3} = 1$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} x = -1 \\ y = 3 \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{cases} x = 2 \\ y = 1 \end{cases}$$

(3)

5.

$$\begin{cases} 4x - 3y + 2 = 0 \\ 2y + 5z - 19 = 0 \\ 5x - 7z + 16 = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 4x - 3y + 2 = 0 & (1) \\ 2y + 5z - 19 = 0 & (2) \\ 5x - 7z + 16 = 0 & (3) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \cdot 2 \Rightarrow 8x - 6y + 4 = 0 \quad (4)$$

$$(2) \cdot 3 \Rightarrow 6y + 15z - 57 = 0 \quad (5)$$

$$(4) + (5) \Rightarrow 8x + 15z - 53 = 0 \quad (6)$$

$$(3) \cdot 8 \Rightarrow 40x - 56z + 128 = 0 \quad (7)$$

$$(6) \cdot 5 \Rightarrow 40x + 75z - 265 = 0 \quad (8)$$

$$(7) - (8) \Rightarrow -131z + 393 = 0 \quad (9)$$

$$\Rightarrow 131z = 393$$

$$\Rightarrow z = 3$$

$$\text{Sub } z = 3 \text{ into (8)} \Rightarrow 40x + 75(3) - 265 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 40x + 225 - 265 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 40x - 40 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x = 1$$

$$\text{Sub } z = 3 \text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow 6y - 12 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow y = 2$$

$$\therefore x = 1, y = 2, z = 3$$

6.

$$\begin{cases} x + y + z = 9 \\ 3x + y - 2z = 1 \\ x - 2y + z = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x + y + z = 9 & (1) \\ 3x + y - 2z = 1 & (2) \\ x - 2y + z = 0 & (3) \end{cases}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) &\Rightarrow x + z = 9 - y & (4) \\
 \text{Sub (4) into (3)} &\Rightarrow 9 - y - 2y = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow 3y = 9 \\
 &\Rightarrow y = 3 \\
 \text{Sub } y = 3 &\text{ into (2)} \Rightarrow 3x - 2z = -2 & (5) \\
 \text{Sub } y = 3 &\text{ into (3)} \Rightarrow x + z = 6 & (6) \\
 (6) \cdot 2 &\Rightarrow 2x + 2z = 12 & (7) \\
 (5) + (7) &\Rightarrow 5x = 10 \\
 &\Rightarrow x = 2 \\
 \text{Sub } x = 2 &\text{ into (6)} \Rightarrow z = 4 \\
 \\ 
 \therefore x = 2, y = 3, z = 4
 \end{aligned}$$

7.

$$\begin{cases} 2x - 3y - z = 4 \\ 4x + y + 2z = 3 \\ x - 4y - 3z = 2 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x - 3y - z = 4 & (1) \\ 4x + y + 2z = 3 & (2) \\ x - 4y - 3z = 2 & (3) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) \cdot 2 &\Rightarrow 4x - 6y - 2z = 8 & (4) \\
 (3) \cdot 4 &\Rightarrow 4x - 16y - 12z = 8 & (5) \\
 (2) - (4) &\Rightarrow 7y + 4z = -5 & (6) \\
 (4) - (5) &\Rightarrow 10y + 10z = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow y + z = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow y = -z \\
 \text{Sub } y = -z &\text{ into (6)} \Rightarrow 7(-z) + 4z = -5 \\
 &\Rightarrow 3z = 5 \\
 &\Rightarrow z = \frac{5}{3} \\
 y = -z &\Rightarrow y = -\frac{5}{3} \\
 \text{Sub } y = -\frac{5}{3} & \\
 \text{and } z = \frac{5}{3} &\text{ into (1)} \Rightarrow 2x - 3(-\frac{5}{3}) - \frac{5}{3} = 4 \\
 &\Rightarrow 2x - \frac{5}{3} = -1 \\
 &\Rightarrow 2x = \frac{2}{3} \\
 &\Rightarrow x = \frac{1}{3} \\
 \\ 
 \therefore x = \frac{1}{3}, y = -\frac{5}{3}, z = \frac{5}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

8.

$$\begin{cases} \frac{3}{x+1} - \frac{1}{y+2} + \frac{1}{z-1} = 2 \\ \frac{2}{x+1} - \frac{3}{y+2} - \frac{1}{z-1} = 7 \\ \frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{1}{y+2} - \frac{4}{z-1} = 8 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} \frac{3}{x+1} - \frac{1}{y+2} + \frac{1}{z-1} = 2 & (1) \\ \frac{2}{x+1} - \frac{3}{y+2} - \frac{1}{z-1} = 7 & (2) \\ \frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{1}{y+2} - \frac{4}{z-1} = 8 & (3) \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Let } u = \frac{1}{x+1}, v = \frac{1}{y+2}, w = \frac{1}{z-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (1) &\Rightarrow 3u - v + w = 2 & (4) \\
 (2) &\Rightarrow 2u - 3v - w = 7 & (5) \\
 (3) &\Rightarrow u + v - 4w = 8 & (6) \\
 (4) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow 9u - 3v + 3w = 6 & (7) \\
 (6) \cdot 3 &\Rightarrow 3u + 3v - 12w = 24 & (8) \\
 (5) + (8) &\Rightarrow 5u - 13w = 31 & (9) \\
 (7) + (8) &\Rightarrow 12u - 9w = 30 \\
 &\Rightarrow 4u - 3w = 10 & (10) \\
 (9) \cdot 4 &\Rightarrow 20u - 52w = 124 & (11) \\
 (10) \cdot 5 &\Rightarrow 20u - 15w = 50 & (12) \\
 (12) - (11) &\Rightarrow 37w = -74 & (13) \\
 &\Rightarrow w = -2 \\
 \text{Sub } w = -2 &\text{ into (10)} \Rightarrow 4u = 4 \\
 &\Rightarrow u = 1 \\
 \text{Sub } u = 1 & \\
 \text{and } w = -2 &\text{ into (6)} \Rightarrow 9 + v = 8 \\
 &\Rightarrow v = -1
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore u = 1, v = -1, w = -2$$

$$\therefore x = 0, y = -3, z = \frac{1}{2}$$

## Chapter 14

# Matrix and Determinant

### 14.1 Matrix

#### Definition of Matrix

A matrix is a rectangular array of numbers, symbols, or expressions, arranged in rows and columns. It is generally denoted as:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $m$  is the number of rows and  $n$  is the number of columns.

Each number in the matrix is called an *entry of the matrix*, the number in the  $i^{th}$  row and  $j^{th}$  column is denoted as  $a_{ij}$ . Thus, a matrix can also be denoted as  $A = (a_{ij})$ , or  $A = (a_{ij})_{mn}$  where  $m$  is the number of rows and  $n$  is the number of columns.

A matrix with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns is called an  $m \cdot n$  matrix, where  $m \cdot n$  is called the *order of the matrix*. For example, the following matrix is a **3 · 4 matrix**:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} \end{pmatrix}$$

When  $m = n$ , the matrix is called a *square matrix*. For example, the following matrix is a **third-order square ma-**

**trix**:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

When  $m = 1$ , the matrix is called a *row matrix*. For example, the following matrix is a **row matrix**:

$$A = (1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5)$$

When  $n = 1$ , the matrix is called a *column matrix*. For example, the following matrix is a **column matrix**:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

#### Equal Matrices

Two matrices  $A$  and  $B$  are equal if they have the same order and the same entries. That is,  $A = B$  if and only if  $A_{ij} = B_{ij}$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ .

#### Zero Matrix

The matrix with all entries equal to zero is called the *zero matrix* and is denoted as  $O$ . Zero matrix can be in any order. For example, the matrix below is a **2 · 2 zero matrix** or a **second-order square zero matrix**:

$$O = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

#### Identity Matrix

The matrix with all entries equal to zero except the entries on the main diagonal, which are equal to one, is called the *identity matrix* and is denoted as  $I$ . Identity matrix can be in

any order. The form of an identity matrix is:

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

## Transpose Matrix

The transpose of a matrix  $A$  is denoted as  $A'$ ,  $A^t$  or  $A^T$  and is obtained by interchanging the rows and columns of  $A$ . For example, given the matrix:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

The transpose of  $A$  is:

$$A' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, we know that the transpose matrix of  $m \cdot n$  matrix is a  $n \cdot m$  matrix.

### 14.1.1 Exercise 14.1

- State the order of the following matrices.

(a)  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**  $A$  is a matrix with order  $3 \cdot 1$ .

(b)  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**  $B$  is a matrix with order  $2 \cdot 4$ .

(c)  $C = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**  $C$  is a matrix with order  $3 \cdot 3$ .

2. Given  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & -2 & 4 \\ 2 & -4 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 6 & 4 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$ , what is  $a_{23}$  and  $a_{34}$ ?

**Sol.**  $a_{23} = 3$  and  $a_{34} = 7$ .

3. If  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 1 & x \end{pmatrix}$ , what is  $x$ ?

**Sol.**  $x = -4$ .

## 14.2 Matrix Addition and Subtraction

Given two matrices  $A$  and  $B$  of the same order, the sum of  $A$  and  $B$  is defined as the matrix  $A + B$  whose  $(i, j)$ -th entry is the sum of the  $(i, j)$ -th entries of  $A$  and  $B$ . That is:

$$A + B = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} + b_{11} & a_{12} + b_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} + b_{1n} \\ a_{21} + b_{21} & a_{22} + b_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} + b_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} + b_{m1} & a_{m2} + b_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} + b_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

The difference of  $A$  and  $B$  is defined as the matrix  $A - B$  whose  $(i, j)$ -th entry is the difference of the  $(i, j)$ -th entries of  $A$  and  $B$ . That is:

$$A - B = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} - b_{11} & a_{12} - b_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} - b_{1n} \\ a_{21} - b_{21} & a_{22} - b_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} - b_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} - b_{m1} & a_{m2} - b_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} - b_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that the order of  $A$  and  $B$  must be the same. For example, the following matrices cannot be added or subtracted:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

The addition of matrices has the following properties:

- Commutative:  $A + B = B + A$ .
- Associative:  $(A + B) + C = A + (B + C)$ .
- Identity:  $A \pm O = A$ .
- Inverse:  $A + (-A) = O$ .
- Transpose:  $(A \pm B)' = A' \pm B'$ .

where  $A, B, C$  are matrices of the same order and  $O$  is the zero matrix of the same order as  $A$ .

Given a matrix  $A$ , if  $A = A'$ , then  $A$  is called a *symmetric matrix*. If  $A = -A'$ , then  $A$  is called an *antisymmetric matrix*.

For any given matrix  $A$ ,  $A + A'$  is symmetric, and  $A - A'$  is antisymmetric.

### 14.2.1 Practice 1

Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 2 & -7 \\ 5 & 4 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & -5 \\ 4 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Find the following:

1.  $A + B'$ .

**Sol.**

$$B' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A + B' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 5 & -3 \\ 8 & 5 & -1 \\ 5 & -7 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

2.  $(A - B)'$

**Sol.**

$$A - B = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & -1 & -9 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \\ -1 & -1 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(A - B)' = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 3 & -1 \\ -9 & 5 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

### 14.2.2 Exercise 14.2

Let  $P = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 4 & 2 \\ 6 & -4 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ . Evaluate the following:

1.  $(P + Q)'$

**Sol.**

$$P + Q = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & -2 & 4 \\ -2 & 1 & 10 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore (P + Q)' = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 9 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 & 10 \end{pmatrix}$$

2.  $Q' - P'$

**Sol.**

$$Q - P = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -6 & 2 \\ -3 & 6 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore Q' - P' = (Q - P)' = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -3 & 2 \\ -6 & 6 & -1 \\ 2 & -2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

3.  $(P' - Q)'$

**Sol.**

$$P' = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 6 & -2 \\ 4 & -4 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$P' - Q = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 8 & -2 \\ 1 & -6 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore (P' - Q)' = \begin{pmatrix} -6 & 1 & 2 \\ 8 & -6 & 3 \\ -2 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

4.  $P' - (I - Q)'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} P' - (I - Q)' &= P' - I' + Q' \\ &= (P + Q)' - I' \\ &= (P + Q - I)' \end{aligned}$$

$$P + Q - I = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & -2 & 4 \\ -2 & 1 & 10 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & -3 & 4 \\ -2 & 1 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore P' - (I - Q)' &= (P + Q - I)' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 9 & -2 \\ 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 & 9 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

## 14.3 Scalar Product of Matrices

Let  $A = (a_{ij})_{m \cdot n}$  be an  $m \cdot n$  matrix,  $k$  be any real number, then  $kA = (ka_{ij})_{m \cdot n}$ . This is called scalar product of a matrix

$A$  and scalar  $k$ . For example:

$$k \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} k & 2k & 3k \\ 4k & 5k & 6k \end{pmatrix}$$

The scalar product of a matrix has the following properties:

- $r(A + B) = rA + sB$
- $(r + s)A = rA + sA$
- $(rs)A = r(sA)$

### 14.3.1 Practice 2

Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$ . Evaluate the following:

1.  $3A + B$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 3A + B &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 0 \\ -9 & 15 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -1 \\ -7 & 11 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

2.  $2A - 3B$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2A - 3B &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ -6 & 10 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -3 \\ 6 & -12 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -12 & 22 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

3.  $4B - 2A$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 4B - 2A &= 2(2B - A) \\ &= 2 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ 4 & -8 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\ &= 2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ 7 & -13 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -4 \\ 14 & -26 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

4.  $A' - 2B'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} A' - 2B' &= (A - 2B)' \\ &= \left( \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 5 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ 4 & -8 \end{pmatrix} \right)' \\ &= \left( \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ -7 & 13 \end{pmatrix} \right)' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -7 \\ 2 & 13 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

### 14.3.2 Exercise 14.3

1. Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $C = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ , Calculate the following:

(a)  $2A - 3B + 4C$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2A - 3B + 4C &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 18 & 3 \\ 9 & 6 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 12 & 4 \\ 4 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 16 & 10 \\ 6 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 18 & 3 \\ 9 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 7 \\ -3 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $4A' - (C + B)'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 4A' - (C + B)' &= 4 \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \left( \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 4 \\ 12 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 10 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

2. Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $C = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$ , evaluate the following:

(a)  $3A + B - 2C$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 3A + B - 2C &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 0 & 3 \\ 9 & 3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 8 & -2 \\ 6 & 2 \\ 4 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 7 \\ 4 & 6 \\ 10 & 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 8 & -2 \\ 6 & 2 \\ 4 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 9 \\ -2 & 4 \\ 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $3(A + C)' - B'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 3(A + C)' - B' \\
 &= 3 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \right)' - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}' \\
 &= 3 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \right)' - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 15 & 9 & 15 \\ 3 & 6 & -6 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 13 & 5 & 14 \\ 2 & 3 & -6 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Given  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ , Find the matrix X in the following expression:

(a)  $X + 4A = 3(X + B) - A$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 X + 4A &= 3(X + B) - A \\
 &= 3X + 3B - A \\
 2X &= 5A - 3B \\
 2X &= 5 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} - 3 \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 10 & 15 \\ 0 & 5 & 5 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 3 & 9 \\ 3 & 6 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 7 & 6 \\ -3 & -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\
 x &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{7}{2} & 3 \\ -\frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $2A - B + X' = B$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 2A - B + X' &= B \\
 X' &= -2A + 2B \\
 &= -2(A - B) \\
 &= -2 \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\
 &= -2 \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 X &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ -2 & 2 \\ 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

## 14.4 Multiplication of Matrices

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be matrices of order  $m \cdot n$  and  $n \cdot p$  respectively. Then the product of  $A$  and  $B$  is defined as the matrix  $AB$  of order  $m \cdot p$  such that the  $(i, j)^{th}$  element of  $AB$  is given by

$$(AB)_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj}$$

The multiplication of matrices has the following properties:

- Associative:  $A(BC) = (AB)C$
- Distributive:  $A(B + C) = AB + AC$  and  $(B + C)A = BA + CA$
- $k(AB) = (kA)B$  for  $k \neq 0$

### 14.4.1 Practice 3

Evaluate the following:

1.  $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} -1(-1) + (-1)(2) & -1(2) + (-1)(1) \\ 2(2) + 3(-1) & 2(1) + 3(2) \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ 1 & 8 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

2.  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 3(0) + 4(3) & 3(1) + 4(-3) & 3(2) + 4(2) \\ -1(0) + 1(3) & -1(1) + 1(-3) & -1(2) + 1(2) \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 12 & -9 & 14 \\ 3 & -4 & 0 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

3.  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 \\ 3 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 & 5 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 \\ 3 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 & 5 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1(6) + 0(-2) & 1(1) + 0(3) & 1(5) + 0(2) \\ 2(6) + 4(-2) & 2(1) + 4(3) & 2(5) + 4(2) \\ 3(6) + (-5)(-2) & 3(1) + (-5)(3) & 3(5) + (-5)(2) \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 & 5 \\ 4 & 14 & 18 \\ 28 & -12 & 5 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$4. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1(1) + 3(2) + 2(-1) & 1(3) + 3(1) + 2(3) \\ 0(1) + 1(2) + 5(-1) & 0(3) + 1(1) + 5(3) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 \\ -3 & 16 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

#### 14.4.2 Exercise 14.4

Calculate the following products (Question 1 to 8):

$$1. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (1(1) + 2(2) + 3(3)) \\ &= (14) \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 3 & 6 & 9 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$3. \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2(1) + (-3)(0) & 2(0) + (-3)(1) \\ 1(1) + 5(0) & 1(0) + 5(1) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$4. \begin{pmatrix} -6 & -4 & 2 \\ 7 & 8 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} -6 & -4 & 2 \\ 7 & 8 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -6(1) + (-4)(2) + 2(3) \\ 7(1) + 8(2) + (-5)(3) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$5. \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2(2) + 3(3) + 4(4) & 2(0) + 3(1) + 4(2) \\ 0(2) + 1(3) + 2(4) & 0(0) + 1(1) + 2(2) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 27 & 11 \\ 11 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$6. \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 4 & 2 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 6(5) + 4(2) + 2(3) \\ 5(5) + (-2)(2) + 0(3) \\ 0(5) + 3(2) + 1(3) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 44 \\ 21 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$7. \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0(0)+1(1)+0(0) & 0(1)+1(0)+0(0) & 0(0)+1(0)+0(1) \\ 1(0)+0(1)+0(0) & 1(1)+0(0)+0(0) & 1(0)+0(0)+0(1) \\ 0(0)+0(1)+1(0) & 0(1)+0(0)+1(0) & 0(0)+0(0)+1(1) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$8. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1+(-2)+1 & 2+(-4)+2 & 3+(-6)+3 \\ (-3)+4+(-1) & (-6)+8+(-2) & (-9)+12+(-3) \\ (-2)+2+0 & (-4)+4+0 & (-6)+6+0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

When  $n = 1$ , the determinant is the value of the only element in the matrix.

For a 2x2 matrix, the determinant is defined as:

$$\det(A) = \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - bc$$

Find the value of the following determinants.

$$1. \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 5 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 5 & 7 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 2(7) - (-3)(5) \\ &= 14 + 15 \\ &= 29 \end{aligned}$$

2.  $\begin{vmatrix} -6 & -7 \\ -8 & -9 \end{vmatrix}$

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} -6 & -7 \\ -8 & -9 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (-6)(-9) - (-7)(-8) \\ &= 54 - 56 \\ &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

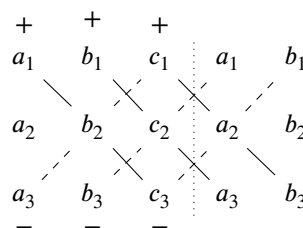
3.  $\begin{vmatrix} 12 & -20 \\ -21 & 35 \end{vmatrix}$

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} 12 & -20 \\ -21 & 35 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 12(35) - (-20)(-21) \\ &= 420 - 420 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

For a 3x3 matrix, the determinant is defined as:

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A) &= \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - b_1 \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + c_1 \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a_1 b_2 c_3 + b_1 c_2 a_3 + c_1 a_2 b_3 - a_3 b_2 c_1 - b_3 c_2 a_1 \\ &\quad - c_3 a_2 b_1\end{aligned}$$

A 3x3 matrix can be expanded using the Sarrus method. The Sarrus method is defined as:



Note that the Sarrus method is only applicable to  $3 \times 3$  matrices.

Calculate the value of the following determinants.

$$1. \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 9 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 9 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 54 + 135 + 8 - 54 - 24 - 45 = 74$$



$$2. \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & + & & + & & + \\ 3 & & 1 & & -2 & 3 & 1 \\ & \diagdown & & \diagup & & \diagdown & \diagup \\ 0 & & -1 & & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ & \diagup & & \diagdown & & \diagup & \diagdown \\ 4 & & 2 & & 5 & 4 & 2 \\ & - & & - & & - & - \end{array}$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -15 + 4 - 0 - 8 - 6 - 0 = -25$$

## Minor and Cofactor

The minor of an element in a matrix is the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the row and column containing

the element. Take  $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$  as an example. The minor

of  $a_1$  is  $\begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$ , the minor of  $c_2$  is  $\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$ , and so on.

The cofactor of an element in a matrix is the minor of the element multiplied by  $(-1)^{i+j}$ , where  $i$  and  $j$  are the row and column indices of the element. The cofactor of  $a_1$  is  $(-1)^{1+1} \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$ , the cofactor of  $c_2$  is  $(-1)^{3+2} \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$ , and so on.

Let  $A_1, B_1, C_1$  are the cofactors of  $a_1, b_1, c_1$  respectively. Then

$$A_1 = (-1)^{1+1} \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$B_1 = (-1)^{1+2} \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = - \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$C_1 = (-1)^{1+3} \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Thus,

$$|A| = a_1 A_1 + a_2 B_1 + a_3 C_1$$

That is, the value of the determinant is the elements of the first row multiplied by the cofactors of the elements of the first row.

The sign of the cofactor is determined by the sum of the row and column indices of the element. If the sum is even, the cofactor is positive; if the sum is odd, the cofactor is negative.

Generally, a 3x3 determinant has the following theorem:

**Theorem 1.** The determinant of a 3x3 matrix is the sum of the elements of any row or column multiplied by the cofactors of the elements of that row or column.

That is, we can use the cofactor expansion to calculate the determinant of a 3x3 matrix.

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= a_1 A_1 + b_1 B_1 + c_1 C_1 \\ &= a_2 B_2 + b_2 B_2 + c_2 C_2 \\ &= a_3 C_3 + b_3 C_3 + c_3 C_3 \\ &= a_1 A_1 + a_2 A_2 + a_3 A_3 \\ &= b_1 B_1 + b_2 B_2 + b_3 B_3 \\ &= c_1 C_1 + c_2 C_2 + c_3 C_3 \end{aligned}$$

The determinant of any order matrix can also be calculated by the cofactor expansion.

**Theorem 2.** The product of the elements of any row or column and the cofactor of corresponding elements of another row or column of a determinant is 0.

For example, the product of the elements of the second row and the corresponding element of the cofactor of first row of the determinant is 0. That is,

$$\begin{aligned} &a_2 B_1 + b_2 B_1 + c_2 C_1 \\ &= a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - b_2 \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + c_2 \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a_2 b_2 c_3 + a_2 b_3 c_2 - a_2 b_2 c_3 + a_3 b_2 c_2 + a_2 b_3 c_2 - a_3 b_2 c_2 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

## 14.5.3 Practice 6

Find the value of the following 3x3 determinants.

$$1. \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 2 & 7 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} &\begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 2 & 7 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 4 \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 0 \\ 7 & -1 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 7 & -1 \end{vmatrix} + 2 \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 4(3 - 0) - (2 - 7) + 2(0 + 3) \\ &= 12 + 5 + 6 \\ &= 23 \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -4 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 5 & -4 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 5 \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -3 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 5(0 - 3) - (-8 + 2) + (12 + 0) \\ = -15 + 6 + 12 \\ = 3$$

$$3. \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} - 0 \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} + 2 \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2(-2 - 0) + 2(-2) \\ = -4 - 4 \\ = -8$$

#### 14.5.4 Exercise 14.5a

Find the value of the following determinants.

$$1. \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & -4 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 3(-4) - 2(1) \\ = -12 - 2 \\ = -14$$

$$2. \begin{vmatrix} 35 & -2 \\ -11 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 35 & -2 \\ -11 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 35(5) - (-2)(-11) \\ = 175 - 22 \\ = 153$$

$$3. \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a \\ -a & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a \\ -a & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 1(1) - a(-a) \\ = 1 + a^2$$

$$4. \begin{vmatrix} \sin x & -\cos x \\ \cos x & \sin x \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} \sin x & -\cos x \\ \cos x & \sin x \end{vmatrix} \\ = \sin x \sin x - (-\cos x)(\cos x) \\ = \sin^2 x + \cos^2 x \\ = 1$$

$$5. \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 1 \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} - 2 \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + 3 \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ 3 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 1(15 - 8) - 2(-10 + 6) + 3(8 - 9) \\ = 7 + 8 - 3 \\ = 12$$

$$6. \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & -5 \\ 3 & -1 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & -5 \\ 3 & -1 & 7 \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -5 \\ -1 & 7 \end{vmatrix} - 2 \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ -1 & 7 \end{vmatrix} + 3 \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ 0 & -5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = (0 - 5) - 2(-21 + 4) + 3(15 - 0) \\ = -5 + 34 + 45 \\ = 74$$

$$7. \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 & -2 \\ -3 & 2 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 & -2 \\ -3 & 2 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -1 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + 3 \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + 4 \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -1(10) + 3(-15 + 0) + 4(0 + 4) \\ = -10 + 45 + 16 \\ = 51$$

8.  $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & -q & -r \\ q & 0 & -s \\ r & s & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & -q & -r \\ q & 0 & -s \\ r & s & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -s \\ s & 0 \end{vmatrix} - q \begin{vmatrix} -q & -r \\ s & 0 \end{vmatrix} + r \begin{vmatrix} -q & -r \\ 0 & -s \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 - q(0 + sr) + r(0 + qs) \\ = 0$$

9.  $\begin{vmatrix} p & -q & r \\ q & r & -s \\ -r & s & p \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} p & -q & r \\ q & r & -s \\ -r & s & p \end{vmatrix} \\ = p \begin{vmatrix} r & -s \\ s & p \end{vmatrix} - q \begin{vmatrix} -q & r \\ s & p \end{vmatrix} + r \begin{vmatrix} -q & r \\ r & -s \end{vmatrix} \\ = p(rp + s^2) - q(-qp - sr) - r(qs - r^2) \\ = rp^2 + ps^2 + q^2p + qsr - qsr + r^3 \\ = rp^2 + s^2p + q^2p - r^3$$

10.  $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & x & a \\ 1 & y & b \\ 1 & z & c \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & x & a \\ 1 & y & b \\ 1 & z & c \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} y & b \\ z & c \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} x & a \\ z & c \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x & a \\ y & b \end{vmatrix} \\ = (yc - bz) - (xc - az) + (xb - ay) \\ = bx + cy + az - cx - ay - bz$$

## Identities of Determinants

**Theorem 1.** The value of a determinant is the same as the value of its transpose, aka  $|A| = |A'|$ .

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a & c \\ b & d \end{vmatrix}$$

**Theorem 2.** Switching any two rows or columns of a determinant results in the opposite value.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}$$

### 14.5.5 Practice 7

Given  $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} = 10$ , find  $\begin{vmatrix} b & c & a \\ e & f & d \\ h & i & g \end{vmatrix}$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} b & c & a \\ e & f & d \\ h & i & g \end{vmatrix} = - \begin{vmatrix} a & c & b \\ d & f & e \\ g & i & h \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \\ = 10$$

**Theorem 3.** If two rows or cols of a determinant are identical, the value of the determinant is zero.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ a & b & c \\ d & e & f \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Theorem 4.** If all elements of a row (or column) of a determinant are multiplied by some scalar number  $k$ , the value of the new determinant is  $k$  times of the given determinant.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ ka_2 & kb_2 & kc_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = k \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

### 14.5.6 Practice 8

Using the identities of determinants, prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 10 & -12 & 2 \\ -15 & 18 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 180 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 10 & -12 & 2 \\ -15 & 18 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 5 \cdot 6 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 2 \\ -3 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 5 \cdot 6 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 180 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Theorem 5.** In a determinant each element in any row (or column) consists of the sum of two terms, then the determinant can be expressed as sum of two determinants of same order.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 + d_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 + d_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 + d_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} d_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ d_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ d_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Theorem 6.** If a determinant is obtained by adding a row or column multiplied by a some scalar number  $k$  to a different row or column, then the value of the new determinant is the same as the original determinant.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 + ka_2 & b_1 + kb_2 & c_1 + kc_2 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

### 14.5.7 Practice 9

Prove that  $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 6 & 6 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \quad (\text{Adding row 1 multiplied by -1 to row 2 and 3})$$

$$= 2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & 3 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \quad (\text{Theorem 4})$$

$$= 0 \quad (\text{Theorem 3})$$

**Theorem 7.** The determinant of product of two matrices of equal size is equal to the product of determinants of each matrix, aka  $|AB| = |A||B|$ .

### 14.5.8 Practice 10

Let  $A = \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$  and  $B = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$ . Given that  $|AB| = -18$ , find  $x$ .

**Sol.**

$$\because |AB| = |A||B| = -18$$

$$\therefore \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -18$$

$$-2(3 - 2x) = -18$$

$$3 - 2x = 9$$

$$-2x = 6$$

$$x = -3$$

### 14.5.9 Exercise 14.5b

1. Given  $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -1$ , Find the value of the following determinants.

(a)  $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \left( \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \right)'$$

$$= -1$$

(Theorem 1)

(b)  $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ -2 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= - \left( \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \right)'$$

$$= 1$$

(Theorem 1)

(c)  $\begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -2 & -4 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -2 & -4 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \cdot 2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -4$$

$$(d) \begin{vmatrix} -3 & -2 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} -3 & -2 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -2 & 2 \\ -2 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 1$$

$$(e) \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} 2 + (2 \cdot (-1)) & -2 + (-2 \cdot 2) & 3 + (2 \cdot 1) \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -1$$

$$(f) \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 & 3 \\ 0 & -5 & -2 \\ -1 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 & 3 \\ 0 & -5 & -2 \\ -1 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 + (2 \cdot 3) & 3 \\ 0 & -1 + (2 \cdot (-2)) & -2 \\ -1 & 2 + (2 \cdot 1) & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -1$$

2. Prove the following equations using identities of determinants without expanding them.

$$(a) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 & 12 \\ 3 & 3 & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$L.H.S. = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 & 12 \\ 3 & 3 & 9 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \cdot 3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 = R.H.S. \quad (\text{Theorem 3})$$

$$(b) \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$L.H.S. = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 = R.H.S. \quad (\text{Theorem 3})$$

$$(c) \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & 6 & 5 \\ 12 & 8 & 8 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$L.H.S. = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & 6 & 5 \\ 12 & 8 & 8 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 4 \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 9 & 6 & 5 \\ 3 & 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 = R.H.S. \quad (\text{Theorem 3})$$

$$(d) \begin{vmatrix} 10 & 8 & 2 \\ 15 & 12 & 3 \\ 20 & 32 & 12 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$L.H.S. = \begin{vmatrix} 10 & 8 & 2 \\ 15 & 12 & 3 \\ 20 & 32 & 12 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 8 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 = R.H.S. \quad (\text{Theorem 3})$$

$$(e) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & -2 \\ 7 & 3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 3 & 3 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Proof.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 L.H.S. &= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & -2 \\ 7 & 3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= - \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -4 & 1 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & 7 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 5 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 7 \end{vmatrix} & \text{(Theorem 2)} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} (-4 & 5 & 1) \\ 3 & -2 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 7 \end{vmatrix}' & \text{(Theorem 1)} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 3 & 3 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 7 \end{vmatrix} = R.H.S.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(f) \begin{vmatrix} -6 & 6 & 3 \\ 0 & -9 & -3 \\ 3 & -3 & -6 \end{vmatrix} = -27 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Proof.**

*L.H.S.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \begin{vmatrix} -6 & 6 & 3 \\ 0 & -9 & -3 \\ 3 & -3 & -6 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -3 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= -27 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & -3 & -1 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \text{(Theorem 2)} \\
 &= 27 \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 1 & -2 \\ -3 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \text{(Theorem 2)} \\
 &= -27 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = R.H.S. & \text{(Theorem 4)}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(g) \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 3 & -2 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -3 \\ -1 & 2 & 4 \\ 7 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Proof.**

*L.H.S.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 3 & -2 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 1 + (2 \cdot 0) & 0 & -3 \\ 3 + (2 \cdot (-2)) & -2 & 4 \\ 1 + (2 \cdot 3) & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & \text{(Theorem 6)} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -3 \\ -1 & 2 & 4 \\ 7 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = R.H.S.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(h) \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \\ 5 & -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Proof.**

*L.H.S.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & -2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 5 + (-2 \cdot 1) & 1 & -1 + 1 \\ 2 + (-2 \cdot (-1)) & -1 & -2 - 1 \\ 1 + (-2 \cdot (-2)) & -2 & 4 - 2 \end{vmatrix} & \text{(Theorem 6)} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \\ 5 & -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = R.H.S.
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & -4 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 2x+1 & -2 \\ x & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Given that  $|AB| = -22$ , find the value of  $x$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\because |AB| = |A||B| = -22 \\
 \therefore \begin{vmatrix} 7 & -4 \\ -3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 2x+1 & -2 \\ x & 1 \end{vmatrix} &= -22 \\
 2(2x+1+2x) &= -22 \\
 4x+1 &= -11 \\
 4x &= -12 \\
 x &= -3
 \end{aligned}$$

4. Let  $P = \begin{pmatrix} 3a & 3b & 3c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{pmatrix}$  and  $Q = \begin{pmatrix} a & d & g \\ b & e & h \\ c & f & i \end{pmatrix}$ . Given that  $PQ = \begin{pmatrix} 30 & -18 & -33 \\ -6 & 4 & 6 \\ -11 & 6 & 14 \end{pmatrix}$ , find the value of  $|Q|$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \because |P||Q| &= |PQ| \\ \therefore \begin{vmatrix} 3a & 3b & 3c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a & d & g \\ b & e & h \\ c & f & i \end{vmatrix} &= \begin{vmatrix} 30 & -18 & -33 \\ -6 & 4 & 6 \\ -11 & 6 & 14 \end{vmatrix} \\ 3 \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} &= \begin{vmatrix} 30 & -18 & -33 \\ -6 & 4 & 6 \\ -11 & 6 & 14 \end{vmatrix} \\ 3 \left( \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \right)^2 &= 3 \begin{vmatrix} 10 & -6 & -11 \\ -6 & 4 & 6 \\ -11 & 6 & 14 \end{vmatrix} \\ \left( \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \right)^2 &= \begin{vmatrix} 10 & -6 & -11 \\ -6 & 4 & 6 \\ -11 & 6 & 14 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 4 \\ \therefore |Q| &= \begin{vmatrix} a & d & g \\ b & e & h \\ c & f & i \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \left( \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \right)' \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \pm 2 \end{aligned}$$

Find the value of x in the following equations.

$$5. \begin{vmatrix} x & x \\ -2x & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 6$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} x & x \\ -2x & -1 \end{vmatrix} &= 6 \\ x \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -2x & -1 \end{vmatrix} &= 6 \\ x(-1 + 2x) &= 6 \\ -x + 2x^2 &= 6 \\ 2x^2 - x - 6 &= 0 \\ (x - 2)(2x + 3) &= 0 \\ x = 2 \text{ or } x &= -\frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$6. \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & x & 9 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 6 \\ 3 & x & 9 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ 2 \cdot 3 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 2 \\ 3 & x & 3 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 2 \\ 3 & x & 3 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ x & 3 \end{vmatrix} - 2 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ x & 3 \end{vmatrix} + 3 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 5 & 2 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ 15 - 2x - 12 + 12 &= 0 \\ -2x &= -15 \\ x &= \frac{15}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$7. \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & x \\ 1 & x & 1 \\ x & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & x \\ 1 & x & 1 \\ x & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ \begin{vmatrix} x & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} + x \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x \\ x & 1 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ x - 1 - 1 + x + x - x^3 &= 0 \\ -x^3 + 3x - 2 &= 0 \\ x^3 - 3x + 2 &= 0 \\ (x + 2)(x^2 - 2x + 1) &= 0 \\ x = -2 \text{ or } x &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$8. \begin{vmatrix} 2x - 7 & 6 & 9 \\ 3x - 5 & 5 & 4 \\ x - 3 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2x-7 & 6 & 9 \\ 3x-5 & 5 & 4 \\ x-3 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2x & 6 & 9 \\ 3x & 5 & 4 \\ x & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} -7 & 6 & 9 \\ -5 & 5 & 4 \\ -3 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2x & 6 & 9 \\ 3x & 5 & 4 \\ x & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -58$$

$$x \begin{vmatrix} 6 & 9 \\ 5 & 4 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 2x & 6 \\ 3x & 5 \end{vmatrix} = -58$$

$$-21x + 10x - 18x = -58$$

$$-29x = -58$$

$$x = 2$$

9.  $\begin{vmatrix} 15-2x & 11 & 10 \\ 11-3x & 17 & 16 \\ 7-x & 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 15-2x & 11 & 10 \\ 11-3x & 17 & 16 \\ 7-x & 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 15 & 11 & 10 \\ 11 & 17 & 16 \\ 7 & 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} -2x & 11 & 10 \\ -3x & 17 & 16 \\ -x & 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} -2x & 11 & 10 \\ -3x & 17 & 16 \\ -x & 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} = 36$$

$$-2x \begin{vmatrix} 17 & 16 \\ 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} + 3x \begin{vmatrix} 11 & 10 \\ 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} - x \begin{vmatrix} 11 & 10 \\ 17 & 16 \end{vmatrix} = 36$$

$$x \left( 2 \begin{vmatrix} 17 & 16 \\ 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} - 3 \begin{vmatrix} 11 & 10 \\ 14 & 13 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 11 & 10 \\ 17 & 16 \end{vmatrix} \right) = -36$$

$$(-6 - 9 + 6)x = -36$$

$$-9x = -36$$

$$x = 4$$

10.  $\begin{vmatrix} x-1 & 0 & x-3 \\ 1 & x-2 & 1 \\ 2 & x-2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} x-1 & 0 & x-3 \\ 1 & x-2 & 1 \\ 2 & x-2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$(x-2) \begin{vmatrix} x-1 & 0 & x-3 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$(x-2) \left( - \begin{vmatrix} x-1 & x-3 \\ 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x-1 & x-3 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \right) = 0$$

$$(x-2) [-(2x-2-2x+6) + (x-1-x-3)] = 0$$

$$(x-2) = 0$$

$$x = 2$$

## 14.6 Inverse Matrix

If two square matrices  $A$  and  $B$  are of the same order such that  $AB = BA = I$ , while  $I$  is an identity matrix that has the same order as  $A$  and  $B$ , then  $A$  and  $B$  are said to be inverse matrices of each other, and can be denoted as  $B = A^{-1}$  and  $A = B^{-1}$ .

Note that only square matrix have inverse matrix. If a matrix has an inverse matrix, then it is said to be invertible, and the inverse matrix is unique.

### Inverse Matrix of a 2x2 Matrix

Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$  be a 2x2 matrix. Then

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad-bc} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix} \quad (ad-bc \neq 0)$$

If  $|A| = ad-bc = 0$ , then  $A$  is said to be non-invertible.

### 14.6.1 Practice 11

Determine if the following matrices are invertible. If they are, find their inverse matrices.

1.  $\begin{pmatrix} 6 & 3 \\ 7 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$|A| = 6 \cdot 5 - 3 \cdot 7 = 9 \neq 0$$

$\therefore A$  is invertible.

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{9} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -3 \\ -7 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{9} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ -\frac{7}{9} & \frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix}$$

2.  $\begin{pmatrix} -3 & -2 \\ 6 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$



**Sol.**

$$|A| = -3 \cdot 4 - (-2) \cdot 6 = 0$$

$\therefore A$  is non-invertible.

3.  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -6 \\ 3 & -5 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$|A| = 2 \cdot -5 - (-6) \cdot 3 = 8 \neq 0$$

$\therefore A$  is invertible.

$$\begin{aligned} A^{-1} &= \frac{1}{8} \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 6 \\ -3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{8} & \frac{3}{4} \\ -\frac{3}{8} & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

4. If  $\begin{pmatrix} 2b+1 & 2 \\ -3b-3 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$  is non-invertible, find the value of  $b$ .

**Sol.**

$\therefore$  The matrix is non-invertible

$$\therefore \begin{vmatrix} 2b+1 & 2 \\ -3b-3 & -4 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$-8b - 4 + 6b + 6 = 0$$

$$-2b + 2 = 0$$

$$b = 1$$

### Inverse Matrix of a 3x3 Matrix

Let a 3x3 matrix  $A$  be of the form  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}$ . Arrange all the cofactors of elements in  $A$  into a matrix:

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_1 & B_1 & C_1 \\ A_2 & B_2 & C_2 \\ A_3 & B_3 & C_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then the transpose of the matrix is the adjoint matrix of  $A$ , and can be denoted as  $\text{adj } A$ . That is:

$$\text{adj } A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & A_2 & A_3 \\ B_1 & B_2 & B_3 \\ C_1 & C_2 & C_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

The inverse matrix of  $A$  is:

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{|A|} \text{adj } A \quad (|A| \neq 0)$$

### 14.6.2 Practice 12

Find the inverse matrix of the following matrices.

1.  $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 6$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 2 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 8 & -3 \\ 1 & -4 & 3 \\ 2 & 10 & -6 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{adj } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 8 & -4 & 10 \\ -3 & 3 & -6 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore A^{-1} = \frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 8 & -4 & 10 \\ -3 & 3 & -6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{4}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} & \frac{5}{3} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

2.  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 8$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -2 & -2 \\ 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 8 & 4 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{adj } A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 8 \\ -2 & 2 & 4 \\ -2 & -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore A^{-1} = \frac{1}{8} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 8 \\ -2 & 2 & 4 \\ -2 & -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 1 \\ -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

### Solving Systems of Linear Equations

Binary and ternary systems of linear equations can be solved by using the inverse matrix of the coefficient matrix. Note that the coefficient matrix must be invertible for this method to work.

### 14.6.3 Practice 13

Solve the following systems of linear equations using the inverse matrix method.

$$1. \begin{cases} 3x - 2y = 12 \\ 7x + 5y = -1 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 7 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ A^{-1}A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{29} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ -7 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{29} \begin{pmatrix} 58 \\ -87 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 2, y = -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{cases} x + y + z = 6 \\ 2x - y + z = 3 \\ x - y - 2z = -7 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \\ A^{-1}A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{7} & \frac{1}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \\ \frac{5}{7} & -\frac{3}{7} & \frac{1}{7} \\ -\frac{1}{7} & \frac{2}{7} & -\frac{3}{7} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 1, y = 2, z = 3 \end{aligned}$$

### 14.6.4 Exercise 14.6

Determine if the following second-order matrices are invertible. If they are, find their inverse matrix.

$$1. \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 7 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= 5 \cdot 3 - 2 \cdot 7 = 1 \neq 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is invertible} \\ A^{-1} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ -7 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -8 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= 4 \cdot 2 - (-8) \cdot (-1) = 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is not invertible} \end{aligned}$$

$$3. \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 5 \\ -6 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= 10 \cdot (-3) - 5 \cdot (-6) = 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is not invertible} \end{aligned}$$

$$4. \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -5 \\ -7 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= 4 \cdot 9 - (-5) \cdot (-7) = 1 \neq 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is invertible} \\ A^{-1} &= \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 5 \\ 7 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$5. \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= (-2) \cdot 3 - (-1) \cdot 6 = 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is not invertible} \end{aligned}$$

$$6. \begin{pmatrix} \sin \alpha & -\cos \alpha \\ \cos \alpha & \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= \sin \alpha \cdot \sin \alpha - (-\cos \alpha) \cdot \cos \alpha = 1 \neq 0 \\ \therefore A &\text{ is invertible} \\ A^{-1} &= \begin{pmatrix} \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \\ -\cos \alpha & \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$7. \text{ Given that the inverse matrix of matrix } \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 1 & x \end{pmatrix} \text{ is } \begin{pmatrix} x & y \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ find the value of } x \text{ and } y.$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 1 & x \end{vmatrix} = -2x - 5$$

$$(-2x - 5) \begin{pmatrix} x & -5 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x & y \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2x^2 - 10x & 10x + 25 \\ 2x + 5 & 4x + 10 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x & y \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Comparing coefficients,

$$\begin{cases} -2x^2 - 10x = x \\ 10x + 25 = y \\ 2x + 5 = -1 \\ 4x + 10 = -2 \end{cases}$$

$$2x = -6$$

$$x = -3$$

$$-30 + 25 = y$$

$$y = -5$$

$$\therefore x = -3, y = -5$$

8. If the matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & x \\ -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$  is not invertible, find the value of  $x$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 3 & x \\ -2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 3 \cdot 4 - x \cdot (-2) = 0$$

$$12 + 2x = 0$$

$$x = -6$$

9. Given the matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} y^2 - 7 & -2 \\ 6 & 2y \end{pmatrix}$ , find the range of  $y$  such that the matrix is invertible.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} y^2 - 7 & -2 \\ 6 & 2y \end{vmatrix} = (y^2 - 7) \cdot 2y + 12 \neq 0$$

$$y^3 - 7y + 6 \neq 0$$

$$(y - 1)(y + 3)(y - 2) \neq 0$$

$$y \in \mathbb{R}, y \neq -3, 1, 2$$

10. Given the matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} x & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & x - 1 & -2 \\ 1 - x & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , find the range of  $x$  such that the matrix is not invertible.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & x - 1 & -2 \\ 1 - x & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} -1 & x - 1 \\ 1 - x & 1 \end{vmatrix} + 2 \begin{vmatrix} x & 2 \\ 1 - x & 1 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x & 2 \\ -1 & x - 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 1 + x^2 - 2x + 1 + 2x - 4 + 4x + x^2 - x + 2$$

$$= 2x^2 + 3x - 4 = 0$$

$$(x + 2)(2x - 1) = 0$$

$$x = -2 \text{ or } x = \frac{1}{2}$$

11. Given an identity matrix  $I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ , and  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 1 & b \end{pmatrix}$ . If  $AJA = J$ , and  $A + A^{-1} = 3I$ , find  $A$ .

**Sol.**

$$AJA = J$$

$$A^{-1}AJA = A^{-1}J$$

$$JA = A^{-1}J$$

$$A^{-1} = 3I - A$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3 - a & -1 \\ -1 & 3 - b \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 1 & b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 - a & -1 \\ -1 & 3 - b \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & b \\ -a & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 - a \\ -3 + b & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$b = 3 - a$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 1 & b \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{ab - 1} \begin{pmatrix} b & -1 \\ -1 & a \end{pmatrix} = 3I$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & 1 \\ 1 & b \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \frac{b}{ab-1} & \frac{-1}{ab-1} \\ \frac{-1}{ab-1} & \frac{a}{ab-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2b-a+b}{ab-1} & \frac{ab-2}{ab-1} \\ \frac{ab-2}{ab-1} & \frac{ab^2-b+a}{ab-1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\frac{ab-2}{ab-1} = 0$$

$$a(3-a) - 2 = 0$$

$$a^2 - 3a + 2 = 0$$

$$(a-2)(a-1) = 0$$

$$a = 2 \text{ or } a = 1$$

When  $a = 2$ ,  $b = 1$ , and when  $a = 1$ ,  $b = 2$

$$\therefore A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

12. Given that  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ , and

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ -2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ if } AB = C, \text{ find } A.$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} AB &= C \\ ABB^{-1} &= CB^{-1} \\ A &= CB^{-1} \\ A &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ -2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -9 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -4 & 0 \\ -7 & 20 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Find the inverse matrix of the following matrices.

$$13. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} &= 1 \\ \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -6 & 2 \\ -2 & -4 & -1 \\ -2 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{adj } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -2 \\ -6 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore A^{-1} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -2 \\ -6 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$14. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -2 \end{vmatrix} &= 9 \\ \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 5 & 1 \\ 4 & -3 & -2 \\ 1 & -3 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{adj } A &= \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 4 & 1 \\ 6 & -3 & -3 \\ 1 & -2 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore A^{-1} &= \frac{1}{9} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 4 & 1 \\ 6 & -3 & -3 \\ 1 & -2 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{2}{9} & \frac{4}{9} & \frac{1}{9} \\ \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{9} & -\frac{2}{9} & -\frac{5}{9} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$15. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} &= 5 \\ \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -4 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ -4 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -13 & 6 & 8 \\ 10 & -5 & -5 \\ 9 & -3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{adj } A &= \begin{pmatrix} -13 & 10 & 9 \\ 6 & -5 & -3 \\ 8 & -5 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore A^{-1} &= \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} -13 & 10 & 9 \\ 6 & -5 & -3 \\ 8 & -5 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{13}{5} & \frac{10}{5} & \frac{9}{5} \\ \frac{6}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{8}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} & -\frac{4}{5} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Solve the following systems of linear equations using the inverse matrix method.

$$16. \begin{cases} 3x + 2y = 1 \\ 4x - y = 5 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ A^{-1}A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= -\frac{1}{11} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -2 \\ -4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= -\frac{1}{11} \begin{pmatrix} -11 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 1, y = 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$17. \begin{cases} 2x - 7y = 8 \\ 9x - 4y = -19 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -7 \\ 9 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -19 \end{pmatrix} \\ A^{-1}A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -19 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -19 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{55} \begin{pmatrix} -4 & 7 \\ -9 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ -19 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{55} \begin{pmatrix} -165 \\ -110 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= -3, y = -2 \end{aligned}$$

$$18. \begin{cases} 2x + 4y - 3z = 3 \\ 3x - 8y + 6z = 1 \\ 8x - 2y - 9z = 4 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & -3 \\ 3 & -8 & 6 \\ 8 & -2 & -9 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{25} & \frac{1}{7} & 0 \\ \frac{25}{98} & \frac{49}{6} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{147}{49} & -\frac{14}{21} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 1, y = \frac{1}{2}, z = \frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$19. \begin{cases} 3x - y + 4z = 0 \\ 5x + 4y - 3z = 0 \\ 2x - 3y - z = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 4 \\ 5 & 4 & -3 \\ 2 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 0, y = 0, z = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$20. \begin{cases} 3x - y = 14 \\ 2y + z = 5 \\ 5z - x = 10 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Let } A &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ A \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 14 \\ 5 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} &= A^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 14 \\ 5 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{10}{31} & \frac{5}{31} & -\frac{1}{31} \\ \frac{31}{15} & \frac{31}{15} & -\frac{3}{31} \\ -\frac{2}{31} & \frac{31}{31} & \frac{6}{31} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 14 \\ 5 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 5, y = 1, z = 3\end{aligned}$$

## 14.7 Gauss Elimination

The concept of Gauss elimination is to eliminate the variables in the equations one by one, through the use of elementary row operations. The elementary row operations are as follows:

1. Interchange two rows:

$$R_i \leftrightarrow R_j: \text{ interchange row } i \text{ and row } j.$$

2. Multiply a row by a nonzero constant:

$$R_i \rightarrow kR_i: \text{ multiply row } i \text{ by } k, \text{ where } k \text{ is a nonzero constant.}$$

3. Add a multiple of one row to another row:

$$R_i \rightarrow R_i + kR_j: \text{ add } k \text{ times row } j \text{ to row } i.$$

### 14.7.1 Practice 14

Solve the following system of equations by Gauss elimination:

$$1. \begin{cases} 3x - 2y - z = 4 \\ 2x + y - 4z = 4 \\ x + 2y - 3z = 4 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} &\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & -4 & 8 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{4}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= 3, y = 2, z = 1\end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{cases} 3x + y + 2z = 5 \\ 2x - 2y + 5z = 3 \\ x - 3y + 4z = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 2 & -2 & 5 & 3 \\ 1 & -3 & 4 & 0 \end{pmatrix} &\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 8 & 0 & 9 & 13 \\ 1 & -3 & 4 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + 3R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 8 & 0 & 9 & 13 \\ 10 & 0 & 10 & 15 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow \frac{1}{10}R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 8 & 0 & 9 & 13 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 0 & 9 & 13 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 8 & 0 & 9 & 13 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 8R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &\xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore x &= \frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{3}{2}, z = 1\end{aligned}$$

Gauss elimination can also be used to find the inverse of a matrix. Let  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix}$  be an invertible matrix, that is,  $|A| \neq 0$ . Now we arrange the matrix  $A$  and the identity

matrix  $I$  into a 3 by 6 augmented matrix  $A|I$  as follows:

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right)$$

We then apply Gauss elimination to the augmented matrix  $A|I$  to obtain the following matrix such that the left hand side of this matrix become an identity matrix:

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33} \end{array} \right)$$

where  $b_{ij}$  are constants, the right hand side of the augmented matrix is the inverse of  $A$ :

$$A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33} \end{pmatrix}$$

### 14.7.2 Practice 15

Using the method of Gauss elimination, find the inverse of

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 2R_1]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -6 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_2]{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -8 & -1 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow -\frac{1}{8}R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{17}{8} & -\frac{7}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{17}{8} & -\frac{7}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ -\frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

### 14.7.3 Exercise 14.7

Solve the following system of linear equations using the method of Gauss elimination:

$$1. \begin{cases} 3x - y - 14 = 0 \\ 2y + z - 5 = 0 \\ x - 5z + 10 = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{cases} 3x - y = 14 \\ 2y + z = 5 \\ x - 5z = -10 \end{cases} \\ & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & -1 & 0 & 14 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & -5 & -10 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 3R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -1 & 15 & 44 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & -5 & -10 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -1 & 15 & 44 \\ 0 & 0 & 31 & 93 \\ 1 & 0 & -5 & -10 \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{31}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -1 & 15 & 44 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & -5 & -10 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 15R_2]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + 5R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 5 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow -R_1]{R_3 \leftrightarrow R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore x = 5, y = 1, z = 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \begin{cases} x + y + z = 6 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 10 \\ 2x + 3y - 4z = 8 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 10 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 & 8 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 2R_1]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -6 & -4 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_2]{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & -8 & -8 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow -\frac{1}{8}R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore x = 3, y = 2, z = 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$3. \begin{cases} -x + y + z = 5 \\ 2x - 7y + 4z = 1 \\ 2x - 5y + 3z = -2 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 1 & 1 & 5 \\ 2 & -7 & 4 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 3 & -2 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + 2R_1 \\ R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_1}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 1 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & -5 & 6 & 11 \\ 0 & -3 & 5 & 8 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 1 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & 5 & 8 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 5R_2 \\ R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_2}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 3 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 & -7 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_3 \rightarrow \frac{1}{7}R_3 \\ R_1 \rightarrow -R_1}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -3 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_3 \\ R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + 3R_3}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore x = -5, y = -1, z = 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$4. \begin{cases} 4x - y - 7z = 0 \\ 5x - 2y - z = 1 \\ 3x + 3y + 5z = 2 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & -1 & -7 & 0 \\ 5 & -2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & 3 & 5 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & -1 & -7 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 & 13 & 1 \\ 3 & 3 & 5 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & -1 & -7 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 & 13 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & 18 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow \frac{1}{3}R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & -1 & -7 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 & 13 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 & 13 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 1 \end{array} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow 4R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ -12 & 0 & 52 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 3R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 49 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{49}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{7} \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_2 \\ R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 6R_2}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & 0 & 0 & \frac{8}{7} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{7} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{7} \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3 \\ R_1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{4}R_1}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{7} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{7} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{7} \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore x = \frac{2}{7}, y = \frac{1}{7}, z = \frac{1}{7} \end{aligned}$$

Find the inverse of the following matrices using the method of Gauss Jordan elimination.

$$5. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 5 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 2R_1 \\ R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 5R_1}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 7 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 7R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & -5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 0 & -3 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{5}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\ & \xrightarrow{\substack{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 2R_2 \\ R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_2}} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{4}{5} & -\frac{2}{5} & \frac{7}{5} \end{array} \right) \\ & \therefore A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ -\frac{4}{5} & -\frac{2}{5} & \frac{7}{5} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$6. \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 14 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 3 & 14 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 3R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & 8 & -3 & 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 3R_2]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & 5 & 0 & 1 & -3 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{5}R_1]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_1]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 3R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -\frac{1}{5} & \frac{8}{5} & -\frac{13}{5} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{14}{5} & -\frac{14}{5} \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow -R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{14}{5} & -\frac{14}{5} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{8}{5} & \frac{13}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{14}{5} & -\frac{14}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{8}{5} & \frac{13}{5} \end{array} \right) \\
 & \therefore A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{14}{5} & -\frac{14}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{5} & \frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{8}{5} & \frac{13}{5} \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned}$$

## 14.8 Cramer's Rule

When using this method, the determinant of the coefficient matrix is not zero.

Considering a ternary system of equations, we have the following:

$$\begin{cases} a_1x + b_1y + c_1z = d_1 \\ a_2x + b_2y + c_2z = d_2 \\ a_3x + b_3y + c_3z = d_3 \end{cases}$$

The coefficient matrix of this system is

$$\Delta = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now we replace the coefficient of  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  in  $\Delta$  with the constants  $d_1$ ,  $d_2$  and  $d_3$  respectively, and we get the following:

$$\Delta_x = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ d_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ d_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix} \Delta_y = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & d_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & d_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & d_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix} \Delta_z = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & d_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & d_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & d_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

The solution of the system of equations is

$$\begin{cases} x = \frac{\Delta_x}{\Delta} \\ y = \frac{\Delta_y}{\Delta} \\ z = \frac{\Delta_z}{\Delta} \end{cases} \quad \Delta \neq 0$$

### 14.8.1 Practice 16

Solve the following system of equations using Cramer's Rule:

$$1. \begin{cases} 2x + 3y + 4z = 5 \\ 3x + 4y + 5z = 2 \\ 4x + 5y + 2z = 3 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 4 & 5 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 4$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} 5 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = -60$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 5 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 52$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -4$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{-60}{4} = -15, y = \frac{52}{4} = 13, z = \frac{-4}{4} = -1$$

$$2. \begin{cases} 3x - y + 2z = 4 \\ 2x + 3y - z = 0 \\ 3x - 2y + z = -1 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -18$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 9$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -27$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -1 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -63$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{9}{-18} = -\frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{-27}{-18} = \frac{3}{2}, z = \frac{-63}{-18} = \frac{7}{2}$$

### 14.8.2 Exercise 14.8

Solve the following system of equations using Cramer's Rule:

$$1. \begin{cases} x + 3y + 2z = -4 \\ 2x + y + 4z = -3 \\ 3x + 4y + z = -2 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 25$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 3 & 2 \\ -3 & 1 & 4 \\ -2 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 25$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 & 2 \\ 2 & -3 & 4 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -25$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & -3 \\ 3 & 4 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -25$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{25}{25} = 1, y = \frac{-25}{25} = -1, z = \frac{-25}{25} = -1$$

$$2. \begin{cases} 2x + 3y - 5z = -4 \\ 4x - y + 3z = 2 \\ 3x + 2y + 4z = 1 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -5 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = -96$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 3 & -5 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -4 & -5 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 48$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -48$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{0}{-96} = 0, y = \frac{48}{-96} = -\frac{1}{2}, z = \frac{-48}{-96} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$3. \begin{cases} x + 2y - 3z = 4 \\ 2x + 3y - z = 5 \\ 3x - y + z = 6 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 3 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 25$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 2 & -3 \\ 5 & 3 & -1 \\ 6 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 55$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 6 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 \\ 3 & -1 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = -15$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{55}{25} = \frac{11}{5}, y = \frac{0}{25} = 0, z = \frac{-15}{25} = -\frac{3}{5}$$

$$4. \begin{cases} \frac{3}{x} + \frac{1}{y} - \frac{1}{z} = 3 \\ \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{y} + \frac{2}{z} = 13 \\ \frac{1}{x} + \frac{4}{y} - \frac{1}{z} = -9 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\text{Let } a = \frac{1}{x}, b = \frac{1}{y}, c = \frac{1}{z}$$

$$\begin{cases} 3a + b - c = 3 \\ a - b + 2c = 13 \\ a + 4b - c = -9 \end{cases}$$

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -23$$

$$\Delta_a = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 13 & -1 & 2 \\ -9 & 4 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -69$$

$$\Delta_b = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 13 & 2 \\ 1 & -9 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 46$$

$$\Delta_c = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 13 \\ 1 & 4 & -9 \end{vmatrix} = -92$$

$$a = \frac{-69}{-23} = 3, b = \frac{46}{-23} = -2, c = \frac{-92}{-23} = 4$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{3}, y = -\frac{1}{2}, z = \frac{1}{4}$$

## 14.9 Revision Exercise 14

Calculate the following (Question 1 to 4):

$$1. 5 \begin{pmatrix} -3 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + 4 \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & 5 \begin{pmatrix} -3 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + 4 \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -15 & -5 \\ 15 & 20 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 24 & 8 \\ 4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 3 \\ 19 & 16 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$2. -4 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} - 3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & -4 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 5 \end{pmatrix} - 3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -12 & 0 \\ 4 & -20 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -3 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -15 & 0 \\ 7 & 17 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$3. \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 8 & -4 & 3 \\ 5 & 7 & -2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 5 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 8 & -4 & 3 \\ 5 & 7 & -2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 5 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 4 & 0 \\ 6 & -3 & 3 \\ 2 & 12 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$4. 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 5 \\ 7 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -6 & 2 \\ -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -3 & 5 \\ 7 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -6 & 2 \\ -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -6 & 10 \\ 14 & 4 & 0 \\ 4 & 8 & -8 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -6 & 2 \\ -5 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 8 \\ 19 & 3 & -1 \\ 4 & 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

5. Given that  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + 3 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$ , find the value of  $x$  and  $y$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + 3 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 15 \\ 3y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 17 \\ -3 + 3y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \\ & x = 17 \\ & y = -3 + 3y \\ & 2y = 3 \\ & y = \frac{3}{2} \\ & \therefore x = 17, y = \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

6. Let  $P = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 4 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $Q = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $R = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ . Find the following:

(a)  $2Q + R'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2Q + R' &= 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -10 & -8 \\ -4 & 0 & 12 \\ 6 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & -2 \\ 5 & -7 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -9 & -8 \\ -4 & -2 & 10 \\ 11 & -3 & 7 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $(P - R) + 2Q'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & (P - R) + 2Q' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 4 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & \quad + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -2 & -4 \\ -2 & 4 & 4 \\ 4 & 2 & -3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -4 & 6 \\ -10 & 0 & 4 \\ -8 & 12 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 6 & 2 \\ -12 & 4 & 8 \\ -4 & 14 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $[2(Q - P)]'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & [2(Q - P)]' \\ &= \left\{ 2 \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & -3 \\ 4 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \right] \right\}' \\ &= \left[ 2 \begin{pmatrix} -2 & -3 & -5 \\ -1 & -2 & 9 \\ -1 & 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -6 & -10 \\ -2 & -4 & 18 \\ -2 & 4 & 10 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -2 & -2 \\ -6 & -4 & 4 \\ -10 & 18 & 10 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $(R' - Q)'$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} (R' - Q)' &= \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}' - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}' - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 & -4 \\ -2 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}' - \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ -5 & 0 & 2 \\ -4 & 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 6 & -2 & -9 \\ 4 & -8 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

7. Let  $M = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $N = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 7 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ . Find the matrix  $X$  in the following equations:

(a)  $2N - 3M = 2M - X$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2N - 3M &= 2M - X \\ X &= 5M - 2N \\ &= 5 \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - 2 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 7 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 0 \\ 20 & -15 \\ 10 & 20 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 12 \\ 14 & -2 \\ -8 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -11 & -12 \\ 6 & -13 \\ 18 & 16 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $2(M - 2N) + X = M + N$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2(M - 2N) + X &= M + N \\ X &= M + N - 2(M - 2N) \\ &= M + N - 2M + 4N \\ &= -M + 5N \\ &= -\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + 5 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 7 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 15 & 30 \\ 35 & -5 \\ -20 & 10 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 16 & 30 \\ 31 & -2 \\ -22 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $(M + 2N)' = X$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} (M + 2N)' &= X \\ X &= (M + 2N)' \\ &= \left[ \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 7 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \left[ \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 12 \\ 14 & -2 \\ -8 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 \\ 18 & -5 \\ -6 & 8 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 18 & -6 \\ 12 & -5 & 8 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $3N' - M' = 2X$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 3N' - M' &= 2X \\ 2X &= (3N - M)' \\ &= \left[ 3 \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ 7 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 18 \\ 21 & -3 \\ -12 & 6 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \right]' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 18 \\ 17 & 0 \\ -14 & 2 \end{pmatrix}' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 17 & -14 \\ 18 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ X &= \begin{pmatrix} 5 & \frac{17}{2} & -7 \\ 9 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Of the following matrices, determine if  $AB$  and  $BA$  are de-

defined. If any of them is defined, find the value of them (Question 8 to 11):

$$8. A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ -2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

∴ The number of columns of  $A$  is not equal to the number of rows of  $B$   
 ∴  $AB$  is not defined

∴ The number of columns of  $B$  is equal to the number of rows of  $A$   
 ∴  $BA$  is defined

$$\therefore BA = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ -2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 11 \\ -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$9. A = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

∴ The number of columns of  $A$  is equal to the number of rows of  $B$   
 ∴  $AB$  is defined

$$\therefore AB = \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -17 \\ -5 & -11 \end{pmatrix}$$

∴ The number of columns of  $B$  is equal to the number of rows of  $A$   
 ∴  $BA$  is defined

$$\therefore BA = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -5 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 11 & -6 & -3 \\ 13 & -12 & -9 \\ -9 & -4 & -9 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$10. A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 5 & 4 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ -7 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

∴ The number of columns of  $A$  is equal to the number of rows of  $B$   
 ∴  $AB$  is defined

$$\therefore AB = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 5 & 4 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ -7 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 11 & -1 \\ 17 & 4 \\ -58 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

∴ The number of columns of  $B$  is not equal to the number of rows of  $A$   
 ∴  $BA$  is not defined

$$11. A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 4 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

∴ The number of columns of  $A$  is not equal to the number of rows of  $B$   
 ∴  $AB$  is not defined

∴ The number of columns of  $B$  is equal to the number of rows of  $A$   
 ∴  $BA$  is defined

$$\therefore BA = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 4 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 0 \\ 10 & 4 \\ 18 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

12. Given that  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a & 3a \\ 2b & b \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $AB = \begin{pmatrix} 45 \\ 48 \end{pmatrix}$ , find the value of  $a$  and  $b$ .

**Sol.**

$$AB = \begin{pmatrix} a & 3a \\ 2b & b \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 45 \\ 48 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3a + 6a \\ 6b + 2b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 45 \\ 48 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$9a = 45$$

$$8b = 48$$

$$a = 5$$

$$b = 6$$

13. Given that  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix}$ ,  $A + B = AB$ , find the value of  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$ .

**Sol.**

$$A + B = AB$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & c \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3+a & b \\ 0 & 4+c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3a & 3b \\ 0 & 4c \end{pmatrix}$$

$$3+a = 3a$$

$$2a = 3$$

$$b = 3b$$

$$2b = 0$$

$$4+c = 4c$$

$$3c = 4$$

$$a = \frac{3}{2}, b = 0, c = \frac{4}{3}$$

Find the value of the following determinants (Question 14 to 22):

$$14. \begin{vmatrix} 20 & 15 \\ 8 & 6 \end{vmatrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 20 & 15 \\ 8 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 20 \cdot 6 - 15 \cdot 8 \\ = 120 - 120 \\ = 0$$

15.  $\begin{vmatrix} 6 & -7 \\ 15 & -2 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 6 & -7 \\ 15 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 6 \cdot -2 - (-7) \cdot 15 \\ = -12 + 105 \\ = 93$$

16.  $\begin{vmatrix} -4 & -10 \\ 12 & 7 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} -4 & -10 \\ 12 & 7 \end{vmatrix} = -4 \cdot 7 - (-10) \cdot 12 \\ = -28 + 120 \\ = 92$$

17.  $\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 3 & -6 \\ 2 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & + & & + & \\ 3 & & 3 & & -6 \\ & \diagdown & & \diagup & \\ 2 & & -2 & & 0 \\ & \diagup & & \diagdown & \\ 3 & & 0 & & -3 \end{array}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 3 & -6 \\ 2 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 18 + 0 + 0 - 36 - 0 + 18 \\ = 0$$

18.  $\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 7 & 1 \\ -3 & 6 & 9 \\ 4 & 7 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & + & & + & \\ 5 & & 7 & & 1 \\ & \diagdown & & \diagup & \\ -3 & & 6 & & 9 \\ & \diagup & & \diagdown & \\ 4 & & 7 & & 3 \end{array}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 7 & 1 \\ -3 & 6 & 9 \\ 4 & 7 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 90 + 252 - 21 - 24 - 315 + 63 \\ = 45$$

19.  $\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 7 & -4 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & + & & + & \\ -2 & & 7 & & -4 \\ & \diagdown & & \diagup & \\ 3 & & -5 & & 2 \\ & \diagup & & \diagdown & \\ -1 & & 0 & & -3 \end{array}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 7 & -4 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -30 - 14 - 0 + 20 + 0 + 63 \\ = -39$$

20.  $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - 3 \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = -11 - 3 + 2 = -12$$

21.  $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 6 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ -2 & -6 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 6 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ -2 & -6 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = 3 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -2 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 \quad (\text{col 1 and 2 are the same})$$

22.  $\begin{vmatrix} 10 & 8 & -2 \\ 15 & 16 & -3 \\ -5 & -4 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{vmatrix} 10 & 8 & -2 \\ 15 & 16 & -3 \\ -5 & -4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -5 \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 8 & 2 \\ 3 & 16 & 3 \\ -1 & -4 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ = 0 \quad (\text{col 1 and 3 are the same})$$

Using the identities of determinant, prove the following equations (Question 23 to 24):

$$23. \begin{vmatrix} bc & 1 & bc(b+c) \\ ca & 1 & ca(c+a) \\ ab & 1 & ab(a+b) \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} bc & 1 & bc(b+c) \\ ca & 1 & ca(c+a) \\ ab & 1 & ab(a+b) \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a^2 b^2 c^2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{bc} & b+c \\ 1 & \frac{1}{ca} & c+a \\ 1 & \frac{1}{ab} & a+b \end{vmatrix} \\ &= a^2 b^2 c^2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{bc} & -a \\ 1 & \frac{1}{ca} & -b \\ 1 & \frac{1}{ab} & -c \end{vmatrix} & C_3 \rightarrow C_3 + (a+b+c)C_1 \\ &= a^2 b^2 c^2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & -a \\ 1 & b & -b \\ 1 & c & -c \end{vmatrix} & C_2 \rightarrow C_2 + abcC_1 \\ &= -a^2 b^2 c^2 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a \\ 1 & b & b \\ 1 & c & c \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 0 & C_2 = C_3 \end{aligned}$$

$$24. \begin{vmatrix} a & 1 & a^2(b+c) \\ b & 1 & b^2(c+a) \\ c & 1 & c^2(a+b) \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

**Proof.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} a & 1 & a^2(b+c) \\ b & 1 & b^2(c+a) \\ c & 1 & c^2(a+b) \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} a & 1 & a^2(b+c) \\ b-a & 0 & b^2(c+a) - a^2(b+c) \\ c-a & 0 & c^2(a+b) - a^2(b+c) \end{vmatrix} \\ &R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_1, R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_1 \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} b-a & 0 & b^2(c+a) - a^2(b+c) \\ c-a & 0 & c^2(a+b) - a^2(b+c) \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (b-a)[c^2(a+b) - a^2(b+c)] \\ &\quad - (c-a)[b^2(c+a) - a^2(b+c)] \\ &= c^2(b-a)(b+a) - a^2(b+c)(c-a) \\ &\quad - b^2(c-a)(c+a) + a^2(b+c)(c-a) \\ &= c^2(b^2 - a^2) - b^2(c^2 - a^2) \\ &= b^2 c^2 - a^2 c^2 - b^2 c^2 + a^2 c^2 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Find the value of  $x$  in the following expressions (Question 25 to 26):

$$25. \begin{vmatrix} 2x & 3 & x+5 \\ -3 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 5x - 1$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} 2x & 3 & x+5 \\ -3 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 5x - 1 \\ & x+5 \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 2x & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 5x - 1 \\ & -7(x+5) - (2x-6) = 5x - 1 \\ & -7x - 35 - 2x + 6 = 5x - 1 \\ & -14x = 28 \\ & x = -2 \end{aligned}$$

$$26. \begin{vmatrix} x+3 & 1 & 0 \\ x & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -x-2 \end{vmatrix} = x + 6$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} x+3 & 1 & 0 \\ x & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -x-2 \end{vmatrix} = x + 6 \\ & -x-2 \begin{vmatrix} x+3 & 1 \\ x & 3 \end{vmatrix} = x + 6 \\ & -(x+2)(3x+9-x) = x + 6 \\ & (x+2)(2x+9) = -x - 6 \\ & 2x^2 + 13x + 18 = -x - 6 \\ & 2x^2 + 14x + 24 = 0 \\ & x^2 + 7x + 12 = 0 \\ & (x+4)(x+3) = 0 \\ & x = -4 \text{ or } x = -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$27. \text{ Given an identity matrix } I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \text{ Let } J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, (2I + J)^{-1} = rI + sJ, \text{ find the value of } r \text{ and } s.$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(2I + J)^{-1} &= \left[ 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right]^{-1} \\&= \left[ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right]^{-1} \\&= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \\&= \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\&= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & \frac{2}{5} \end{pmatrix} \\rI + sJ &= r \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + s \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\&= \begin{pmatrix} r & 0 \\ 0 & r \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 & s \\ -s & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\&= \begin{pmatrix} r & s \\ -s & r \end{pmatrix} \\(2I + J)^{-1} &= rI + sJ \\ \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \\ \frac{1}{5} & \frac{2}{5} \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} r & s \\ -s & r \end{pmatrix} \\ \therefore r &= \frac{2}{5}, s = -\frac{1}{5}\end{aligned}$$

Find the value of  $a$  in the following matrices if they are non-inversible (Question 28 to 31):

28.  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & a \\ -2 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{vmatrix} 3 & a \\ -2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ 18 + 2a &= 0 \\ 2a &= -18 \\ a &= -9\end{aligned}$$

29.  $\begin{pmatrix} 5a+2 & 4 \\ 6 & a \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{vmatrix} 5a+2 & 4 \\ 6 & a \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ 5a^2 + 2a - 24 &= 0 \\ (x-2)(5x+12) &= 0 \\ x &= 2 \text{ or } x = \frac{12}{5}\end{aligned}$$

30.  $\begin{pmatrix} -7 & a & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 0 & -a & 4 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{vmatrix} -7 & a & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 0 & -a & 4 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ -7 \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ -a & 4 \end{vmatrix} - 2 \begin{vmatrix} a & 3 \\ -a & 4 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ -7(-12+a) - 2(4a+3a) &= 0 \\ 84 - 7a - 14a &= 0 \\ 21a &= 84 \\ a &= 4\end{aligned}$$

31.  $\begin{pmatrix} a & -1 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & -2 \\ a+4 & a & -8 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{vmatrix} a & -1 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & -2 \\ a+4 & a & -8 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ a \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ a & -8 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ a+4 & -8 \end{vmatrix} &= 0 \\ 2a^2 - 32 + 2a + 8 &= 0 \\ 2a^2 + 2a - 24 &= 0 \\ a^2 + a - 12 &= 0 \\ (a+4)(a-3) &= 0 \\ a &= -4 \text{ or } a = 3\end{aligned}$$

Find the inverse of the following matrices (Question 32 to 37):

32.  $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} &= -\frac{1}{4} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ -2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

33.  $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} &= -\frac{1}{8} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 \\ -4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

34.  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 9 \\ -2 & 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$



Sol.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 9 \\ -2 & 2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} = 2$$

$$\text{adj} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 9 \\ -2 & 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 9 \\ 2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 9 \\ -2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 9 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 9 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -22 & -6 & 8 \\ 6 & 2 & -2 \\ -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -22 & 6 & -3 \\ -6 & 2 & 0 \\ 8 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 9 \\ -2 & 2 & -4 \end{pmatrix}^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -22 & 6 & -3 \\ -6 & 2 & 0 \\ 8 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -11 & 3 & -\frac{3}{2} \\ -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$35. \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 \\ -2 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 \\ -2 & 5 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -3$$

$$\text{adj} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 \\ -2 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 5 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -4 \\ -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 5 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ 2 & -4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 21 & 6 & 12 \\ -17 & -5 & -9 \\ -5 & -2 & -3 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 21 & -17 & -5 \\ 6 & -5 & -2 \\ 12 & -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 \\ -2 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3} \begin{pmatrix} 21 & -17 & -5 \\ 6 & -5 & -2 \\ 12 & -9 & -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -7 & -\frac{17}{3} & -\frac{5}{3} \\ -2 & -\frac{5}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \\ -4 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$36. \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 16$$

$$\text{adj} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 3 \\ -4 & 4 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ 0 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 0 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & 16 & 16 \\ 3 & -12 & -8 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 16 & -12 \\ 9 & 16 & -8 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & -4 & 4 \end{pmatrix}^{-1}$$

$$= \frac{1}{16} \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -4 & 3 \\ 0 & 16 & -12 \\ 0 & 16 & -8 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{16} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{3}{4} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -9$$

$$\text{adj} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 0 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -3 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ -1 & -3 \end{vmatrix} \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -9 & 3 & 3 \\ -6 & 5 & 2 \\ 12 & -4 & -7 \end{pmatrix}'$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -9 & -6 & 12 \\ 3 & 5 & -4 \\ 3 & 2 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{1}{-9} \begin{pmatrix} -9 & -6 & 12 \\ 3 & 5 & -4 \\ 3 & 2 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{4}{3} \\ -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{5}{9} & \frac{4}{9} \\ -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{9} & \frac{7}{9} \end{pmatrix}$$

Solve the following system of equations using the method of Gauss elimination (Question 38 to 41):

$$37. \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$38. \begin{cases} 2x - y + 4z = 5 \\ 2x + 3y - 4z = -7 \\ x + y + z = 2 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & -1 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 & -7 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 0 & 5 & 7 \\ 4 & 2 & 0 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 0 & 5 & 7 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 0 & 5 & 7 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + 3R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 8 & 16 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{8}R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow -R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \therefore x = -1, y = 1, z = 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$39. \begin{cases} x - 2y - 3z = -4 \\ 3x + y - 4z = -5 \\ 2x + 4y - z = -5 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ 3 & 1 & -4 & -5 \\ 2 & 4 & -1 & -5 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 3R_1]{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ 0 & 7 & 5 & 7 \\ 0 & 8 & 5 & 3 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow R_3 - R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -3 & -4 \\ 0 & 7 & 5 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 7R_3]{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + 2R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -3 & -12 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 35 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow \frac{1}{5}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -3 & -12 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + 3R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 9 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \therefore x = 9, y = -4, z = 7
 \end{aligned}$$

$$40. \begin{cases} x - 2y - z = 3 \\ 4x - y + 2z = 1 \\ x + 3y = 5 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & -1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 5 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 4R_3]{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_3} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -5 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & -13 & 2 & -19 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 5 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 + 2R_1} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & -5 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & -23 & 0 & -23 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 5 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3]{R_2 \rightarrow -\frac{1}{23}R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 3 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -5 & -1 & -2 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \xrightarrow[R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + 5R_2]{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - 3R_2} \left( \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -3 \end{array} \right) \\
 & \therefore x = 2, y = 1, z = -3
 \end{aligned}$$

$$41. \begin{cases} 2x - y - z = 0 \\ 4x - 3y + 2z = 1 \\ 3x - 2y - 4z = -1 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -3 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & -4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 4 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & -4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} R_3 \rightarrow R_3 + R_2 \\ R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_2 \end{matrix}} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & -5 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 4 & 1 \\ 3 & -3 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_3 \rightarrow \frac{1}{3}R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & -5 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - R_3} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & -5 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 + 2R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow \frac{1}{3}R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \\ -1 & 0 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{\begin{matrix} R_2 \rightarrow R_2 - 4R_1 \\ R_3 \leftrightarrow R_2 \end{matrix}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_2 \rightarrow -R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow R_1 - R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{3} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \rightarrow -R_1} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix} \\
 & \therefore x = \frac{1}{3}, y = \frac{1}{3}, z = \frac{1}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

Solve the following system of equations using the Cramer's rule (Question 42 to 45):

$$42. \begin{cases} x - 3y - 2z = 1 \\ 7x + 4y - 5z = 0 \\ 3x + 9y + z = -1 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 & -2 \\ 7 & 4 & -5 \\ 3 & 9 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 13$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 & -2 \\ 0 & 4 & -5 \\ -1 & 9 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 26$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 7 & 0 & -5 \\ 3 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -13$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -3 & 1 \\ 7 & 4 & 0 \\ 3 & 9 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 26$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{26}{13} = 2, y = \frac{-13}{13} = -1, z = \frac{26}{13} = 2$$

$$43. \begin{cases} x - 2y + 3z = 6 \\ 2x + 3y - 4z = 20 \\ 3x - 2y - 5z = 6 \end{cases}$$

Sol.

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 3 & -2 & -5 \end{vmatrix} = -58$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} 6 & -2 & 3 \\ 20 & 3 & -4 \\ 6 & -2 & -5 \end{vmatrix} = -464$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 2 & 20 & -4 \\ 3 & 6 & -5 \end{vmatrix} = -232$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 20 \\ 3 & -2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = -116$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{-464}{-58} = 8, y = \frac{-232}{-58} = 4, z = \frac{-116}{-58} = 2$$

$$44. \begin{cases} 2x - 2y - 4z + 3 = 0 \\ 2x + 3y + 4z - 2 = 0 \\ 7x + 3y - 2z - 2 = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x - 2y - 4z = -3 \\ 2x + 3y + 4z = 2 \\ 7x + 3y - 2z = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & -4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -40$$

$$\Delta_x = \begin{vmatrix} -3 & -2 & -4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = 30$$

$$\Delta_y = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 & -4 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 \\ 7 & 2 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -80$$

$$\Delta_z = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 & -3 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 7 & 3 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 25$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{30}{-40} = -\frac{3}{4}, y = \frac{-80}{-40} = 2, z = \frac{25}{-40} = -\frac{5}{8}$$

$$45. \begin{cases} \frac{2}{x} - \frac{5}{y} + \frac{4}{z} = -3 \\ \frac{4}{x} + \frac{1}{y} - \frac{2}{z} = 7 \\ \frac{x}{7} - \frac{y}{z} = 4 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\text{Let } a = \frac{1}{x}, b = \frac{1}{y}, c = \frac{1}{z}$$

$$\begin{cases} 2a - 5b + 4c = -3 \\ 4a + b - 2c = 7 \\ 7a - 3c = 4 \end{cases}$$

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -5 & 4 \\ 4 & 1 & -2 \\ 7 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -24$$

$$\Delta_a = \begin{vmatrix} -3 & -5 & 4 \\ 7 & 1 & -2 \\ 4 & 0 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -72$$

$$\Delta_b = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 & 4 \\ 4 & 7 & -2 \\ 7 & 4 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -152$$

$$\Delta_c = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -5 & -3 \\ 4 & 1 & 7 \\ 7 & 0 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = -136$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{-72}{-24} = 3, b = \frac{-152}{-24} = \frac{19}{3}, c = \frac{-136}{-24} = \frac{17}{3}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{3}, y = \frac{3}{19}, z = \frac{3}{17}$$

## Chapter 15

# Inequalities and Linear Programming

### 15.1 Inequalities and its Identities

#### Inequalities

An inequality is a relation which makes a non-equal comparison between two numbers or other mathematical expressions. For example:

$$11 > 10$$
$$x^2 + 5 < 6x$$

- $a < b$  means  $a$  is lesser than  $b$
- $a > b$  means  $a$  is greater than  $b$
- $a \leq b$  means  $a$  is lesser than or equal to  $b$
- $a \geq b$  means  $a$  is greater than or equal to  $b$

For any real number  $a$  and  $b$ , the following are true:

1. If  $a - b > 0$ , then  $a > b$
2. If  $a - b < 0$ , then  $a < b$

That means, if we want to compare between two numbers, we just have to calculate their difference.

#### 15.1.1 Practice 1

Compare the following algebraic expressions:

1.  $(x + 3)(x - 1)$  and  $(x + 4)(x - 2)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x + 3)(x - 1) &- (x + 4)(x - 2) \\ &= x^2 + 2x - 3 - (x^2 + 2x - 8) \\ &= x^2 + 2x - 3 - x^2 - 2x + 8 \\ &= 5 > 0 \\ \therefore (x + 3)(x - 1) &> (x + 4)(x - 2)\end{aligned}$$

2.  $(x + 8)(x + 10)$  and  $(x + 9)^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x + 8)(x + 10) &- (x + 9)^2 \\ &= x^2 + 18x + 80 - (x^2 + 18x + 81) \\ &= x^2 + 18x + 80 - x^2 - 18x - 81 \\ &= -1 < 0 \\ \therefore (x + 8)(x + 10) &< (x + 9)^2\end{aligned}$$

3.  $x^2 + 6x$  and  $4x - 2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + 6x &- 4x + 2 \\ &= x^2 + 2x + 2 \\ &= (x + 1)^2 - 1 + 2 \\ &= (x + 1)^2 + 1 \\ \therefore (x + 1)^2 &> 0 \\ \therefore (x + 1)^2 + 1 &> 0 \\ \therefore x^2 + 6x &> 4x - 2\end{aligned}$$

#### Identities of Inequalities

**Theorem 1.** If  $a > b$ ,  $b > c$ , then  $a > c$

**Theorem 2.** If  $a > b$  then  $a + c > b + c$

**Theorem 3.** If  $a > b$ ,  $c > d$ , then  $a + c > b + d$

**Theorem 4.** If  $a > b$ , then:

1. When  $c > 0$ ,  $ac > bc$
2. When  $c = 0$ ,  $ac = bc$
3. When  $c < 0$ ,  $ac < bc$

#### 15.1.2 Practice 2

Given that  $y < x < 0$ , use inequality signs to complete the following statements:

1.  $x + 1$  and  $y + 1$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore y &< x \\ \therefore y + 1 &< x + 1\end{aligned}$$

2.  $2y$  and  $2x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore y &< x, 2 > 0 \\ \therefore 2y &< 2x\end{aligned}$$

3.  $-x + 1$  and  $-y + 2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\because y < x \\ \therefore -x < -y \\ \because 1 < 2, -x < -y \\ \therefore -x + 1 < -y + 2\end{aligned}$$

4.  $3x$  and  $4y$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\because y < x \\ \therefore 3y < 3x & \dots (1) \\ \text{and, } y < 0 & \dots (2) \\ (1) + (2) : 3y + y < 3x \\ 4y < 3x\end{aligned}$$

### 15.1.3 Exercise 15.1

Compare the following algebraic expressions (Question 1 to 5):

1.  $(x-4)^2$  and  $(x-6)(x-2)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x-4)^2 - (x-6)(x-2) \\ = x^2 - 8x + 16 - (x^2 - 8x + 12) \\ = x^2 - 8x + 16 - x^2 + 8x - 12 \\ = 4 > 0 \\ \therefore (x-4)^2 > (x-6)(x-2)\end{aligned}$$

2.  $x^2 + 13$  and  $4x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + 13 - 4x \\ = x^2 - 4x + 13 \\ = (x-2)^2 - 4 + 13 \\ = (x-2)^2 + 9 \\ \because (x-2)^2 > 0 \\ \therefore (x-2)^2 + 9 > 0 \\ \therefore x^2 + 13 > 4x\end{aligned}$$

3.  $(x-1)(x^2+x+1)$  and  $(x+1)(x^2-x+1)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x-1)(x^2+x+1) - (x+1)(x^2-x+1) \\ = x^3 - 1 - x^3 - 1 \\ = -2 < 0 \\ \therefore (x-1)(x^2+x+1) < (x+1)(x^2-x+1)\end{aligned}$$

4.  $(x^2-x+1)(x^2+x+1)$  and  $x^4+x^2-1$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x^2-x+1)(x^2+x+1) - x^4 - x^2 + 1 \\ = x^4 + x^3 + x^2 - x^3 - x^2 - x + x^2 + x + 1 - x^4 - x^2 + 1 \\ = 2 > 0 \\ \therefore (x^2-x+1)(x^2+x+1) > x^4 + x^2 - 1\end{aligned}$$

5.  $(1-2x)(1+2x)$  and  $(x^2-6)^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(x^2-6)^2 - (1-2x)(1+2x) \\ = x^4 - 12x^2 + 36 - 1 + 4x^2 \\ = x^4 - 8x^2 + 35 \\ = (x^2-4)^2 - 16 + 35 \\ = (x^2-4)^2 + 19 \\ \because (x^2-4)^2 > 0 \\ \therefore (x^2-4)^2 + 19 > 0 \\ \therefore (x^2-6)^2 > (1-2x)(1+2x)\end{aligned}$$

6. Given that  $y < x < 0$ , use inequality signs to complete the following:

(a)  $2x-3$  and  $2y-5$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\because y < x, 2 > 0 \\ \therefore 2y < 2x \\ \because -3 > -5, 2x > 2y \\ \therefore 2x-3 > 2y-5\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $x^2$  and  $y^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\because y < x, x^2 > 0, y^2 > 0 \\ \therefore y^2 < x^2\end{aligned}$$

## 15.2 Linear Inequalities

### Solving Linear Inequalities

The general form of a linear inequality is  $ax + b \leq c$ , where  $a \neq 0$ .

#### 15.2.1 Practice 3

Solve the following linear inequalities:

1.  $2x > x + 9$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}2x > x + 9 \\ x > 9\end{aligned}$$

2.  $11 - 2x \leq -7$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 11 - 2x &\leq -7 \\ -2x &\leq -18 \\ 2x &\geq 18 \\ x &\geq 9 \end{aligned}$$

3.  $2(x + 2) \geq \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2x+3}{4}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2(x + 2) &\geq \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2x+3}{4} \\ 2x + 4 &\geq \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2x+3}{4} \\ 24x + 48 &\geq 8 + 6x + 9 \\ 24x + 48 &\geq 17 + 6x \\ 18x &\geq -31 \\ x &\geq -\frac{31}{18} \end{aligned}$$

4.  $2x - \frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{3} < 3x - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{x}{6}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - \frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{3} &< 3x - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{x}{6} \\ 12x - 2x + 2 &< 18x - 3 + x \\ 10x + 2 &< 19x - 3 \\ -9x &< -5 \\ x &> \frac{5}{9} \end{aligned}$$

5.  $10 \leq x + 3 \leq 12$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 10 &\leq x + 3 \leq 12 \\ 7 &\leq x \leq 9 \end{aligned}$$

6.  $-3 < 7 - 2x < 9$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} -3 &< 7 - 2x < 9 \\ -10 &< -2x < 2 \\ -2 &< 2x < 10 \\ -1 &< x < 5 \end{aligned}$$

### 15.2.2 Exercise 15.2a

Solve the following linear inequalities:

1.  $4x - 3 > x + 9$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 4x - 3 &> x + 9 \\ 3x &> 12 \\ x &> 4 \end{aligned}$$

2.  $-4x > 1 - x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} -4x &> 1 - x \\ -3x &> 1 \\ 3x &< -1 \\ x &< -\frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

3.  $3x + 20 \geq 34 - 4x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 7x &\geq 14 \\ 7x &\geq 14 \end{aligned}$$

4.  $5x + 8 \leq 6x - 7$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 5x + 8 &\leq 6x - 7 \\ -x &\leq -15 \\ x &\geq 15 \end{aligned}$$

5.  $1 \leq 6(x - 7)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &\leq 6(x - 7) \\ 1 &\leq 6x - 42 \\ 6x &\geq 43 \\ x &\geq \frac{43}{6} \end{aligned}$$

6.  $2(x + 7) \leq 5x + 14$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2(x + 7) &\leq 5x + 14 \\ 2x + 14 &\leq 5x + 14 \\ -3x &\leq 0 \\ x &\geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

7.  $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{2-3x}{5} > -\frac{7}{2} + \frac{x+1}{5}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x}{2} + \frac{2-3x}{5} &> -\frac{7}{2} + \frac{x+1}{5} \\ 5x + 4 - 6x &> -35 + 2x + 2 \\ -x + 4 &> -33 + 2x \\ -3x &> -37 \\ x &< \frac{37}{3} \end{aligned}$$

8.  $-5 < 12 - x < -1$



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}-5 &< 12 - x < -1 \\ -17 &< -x < -13 \\ 13 &< x < 17\end{aligned}$$

9.  $-\frac{3}{5} < \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{2} < \frac{2}{5}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}-6 &< 5x - 5 < 4 \\ -1 &< 5x < 9 \\ -\frac{1}{5} &< x < \frac{9}{5}\end{aligned}$$

10.  $-2 < \frac{2x}{3} + \frac{1}{2} \leq 4$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}-12 &< 4x + 3 \leq 24 \\ -15 &< 4x \leq 21 \\ -\frac{15}{4} &< x \leq \frac{21}{4}\end{aligned}$$

### Solution of the System of Linear Inequalities

The system of inequalities formed by more than one linear inequality is called a system of linear inequalities. The solution of a system of linear inequalities is the set of all points that satisfy all the inequalities in the system, and can be represented by a numberline.

#### 15.2.3 Practice 4

Solve the following system of linear inequalities.

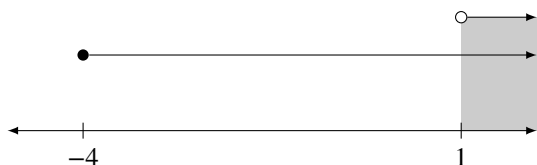
1.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2 \geq 2x - 2 & (1) \\ 4x - 3 > 3x - 2 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : x &\geq 4 \\ (2) : x &> 1\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x > 1$$



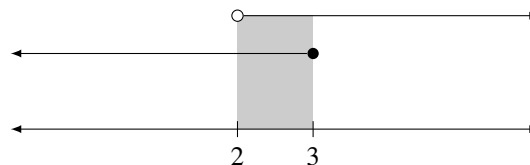
2.

$$\begin{cases} 5x - 4 \leq 2x + 5 & (1) \\ 7 - x < 3 + x & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 3x &\leq 9 \\ x &\leq 3 \\ (2) : -2x &< -4 \\ x &> 2\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 2 < x \leq 3$$



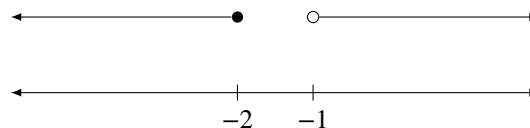
3.

$$\begin{cases} 2 - x < 4 + x & (1) \\ 1 - 2x \geq 3x + 11 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : -2x &< 2 \\ x &> -1 \\ (2) : -5x &\geq 10 \\ x &\leq -2\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  No solution



4.  $2 - x < 2x - 7 \leq x - 9$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2 - x < 2x - 7 & (1) \\ 2x - 7 \leq x - 9 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : -3x &< -9 \\ x &\geq 3 \\ (2) : x &\leq -2\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  No solution



#### 15.2.4 Exercise 15.2b

Solve the following system of linear inequalities.

1.

$$\begin{cases} 5 - x < 6 & (1) \\ 7 - 3x \geq 4 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

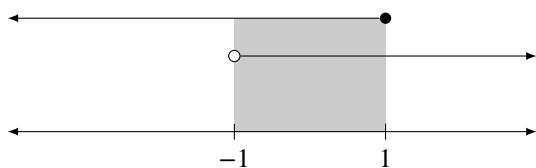
$$(1) : -x < 1$$

$$x > -1$$

$$(2) : -3x \geq -3$$

$$x \leq 1$$

$$\therefore -1 < x \leq 1$$



2.

$$\begin{cases} x + 2 > 0 & (1) \\ 2x + 1 \leq 4x - 3 & (2) \end{cases}$$

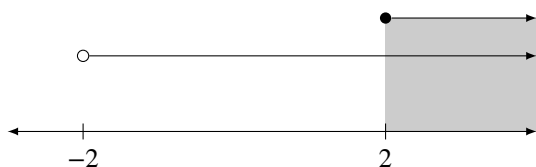
**Sol.**

$$(1) : x > -2$$

$$(2) : -2x \leq -4$$

$$x \geq 2$$

$$\therefore x \geq 2$$



3.

$$\begin{cases} 3x - 1 < 0 & (1) \\ 1 - 2x \geq 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

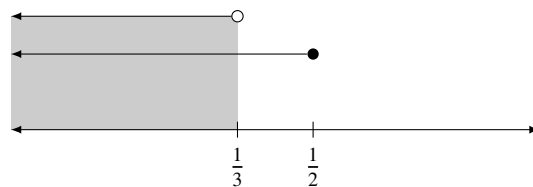
$$(1) : 3x < 1$$

$$x < \frac{1}{3}$$

$$(2) : -2x \geq -1$$

$$x \leq \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore x < \frac{1}{3}$$



4.

$$\begin{cases} 4x - 6 \geq 5x & (1) \\ 3x + 5 \leq x + 9 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

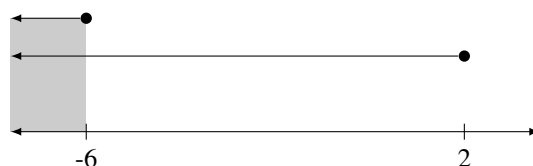
$$(1) : -x \geq 6$$

$$x \leq -6$$

$$(2) : 2x \leq 4$$

$$x \geq 2$$

$$\therefore x \leq -6$$



5.

$$\begin{cases} 2(x + 2) > 3x & (1) \\ 6x - 8 > 4(x + 1) & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$(1) : 2x + 4 > 3x$$

$$-x > -4$$

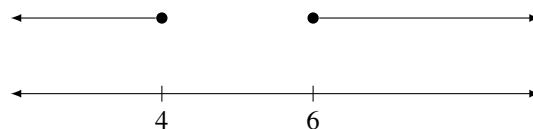
$$x < 4$$

$$(2) : 6x - 8 > 4x + 4$$

$$2x > 12$$

$$x > 6$$

$\therefore$  No solution

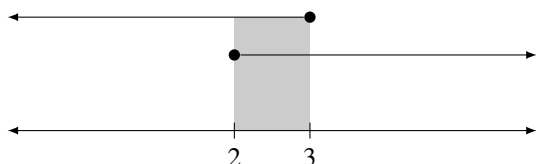


6.

$$\begin{cases} 4x + 4 \leq 3x + 7 & (1) \\ \frac{5x}{2} - 1 \leq 3x - 2 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : x &\leq 3 \\ (2) : 5x - 2 &\leq 6x - 4 \\ -x &\leq -2 \\ x &\geq 2 \\ \therefore 2 &\leq x \leq 3\end{aligned}$$



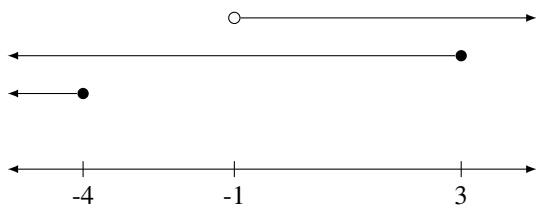
7.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 4 > 1 & (1) \\ 3x - 1 \leq 2x + 2 & (2) \\ 1 - 2x > 5 - x & (3) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 3x &> -3 \\ x &> -1 \\ (2) : x &\leq 3 \\ (3) : -x &> 4 \\ x &< -4\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  No solution



8.

$$\begin{cases} 2x - \frac{1}{3} < 3 - \frac{x}{2} & (1) \\ 2(1 - x) \leq \frac{4x}{3} & (2) \\ 4(3x - 1) > 1 + \frac{9x}{2} & (3) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 12 - 2 &< 18 - 3x \\ 15x &< 20 \\ x &< \frac{4}{3} \\ (2) : 2 - 2x &\leq \frac{4x}{3} \\ 6 - 6x &\leq 4x \\ -10x &\leq -6 \\ x &\geq \frac{3}{5} \\ (3) : 12x - 4 &> 1 + \frac{9x}{2} \\ 24x - 8 &> 2 + 9x \\ 15x &> 10 \\ x &> \frac{2}{3}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{2}{3} < x < \frac{4}{3}$$



9.  $-4 + x \leq 6 - x \leq 10$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} -4 + x \leq 6 - x & (1) \\ 6 - x \leq 10 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 2x &\leq 10 \\ x &\leq 5 \\ (2) : -x &\leq 4 \\ x &\geq 4\end{aligned}$$

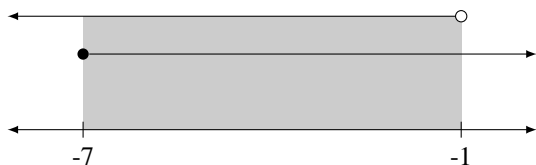
$$\therefore 4 \leq x \leq 5$$

10.  $x - 2 \leq 2x + 5 < 3$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} x - 2 \leq 2x + 5 & (1) \\ 2x + 5 < 3 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : -x &\leq 7 \\ x &\geq -7 \\ (2) : 2x &< -2 \\ x &< -1 \\ \therefore -7 &\leq x < -1\end{aligned}$$



## 15.3 Quadratic Inequalities

### Solution of Quadratic Inequalities

The inequalities containing only one variable, and the highest exponent of the variable is 2, are called quadratic inequalities.

We can solve the quadratic inequalities by first arranging the terms in the form of  $ax^2 + bx + c > 0$  or  $ax^2 + bx + c < 0$ , where  $a > 0$ , then solve the quadratic equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , and finally, compare the solutions with the inequality sign.

Note that for all real numbers, their square is always positive.

#### 15.3.1 Practice 5

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $x^2 + 3x \leq 54$

**Sol.**

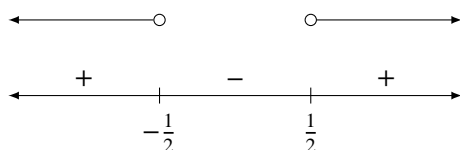
$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 3x &\leq 54 \\ x^2 + 3x - 54 &\leq 0 \\ (x - 6)(x + 9) &\leq 0 \\ x &\leq -9 \text{ or } x \geq 6 \end{aligned}$$



2.  $4x^2 > 1$

**Sol.**

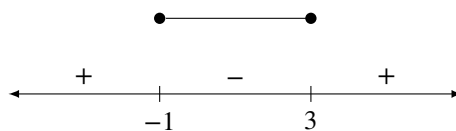
$$\begin{aligned} 4x^2 &> 1 \\ 4x^2 - 1 &> 0 \\ (2x - 1)(2x + 1) &> 0 \\ x &< -\frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x > \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$



3.  $3 + 2x - x^2 \geq 0$

**Sol.**

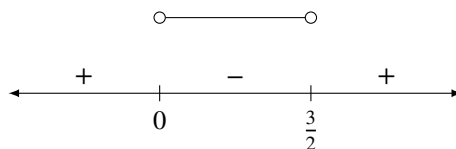
$$\begin{aligned} 3 + 2x - x^2 &\geq 0 \\ -x^2 + 2x + 3 &\geq 0 \\ x^2 - 2x - 3 &\leq 0 \\ (x - 3)(x + 1) &\leq 0 \\ -1 &\leq x \leq 3 \end{aligned}$$



4.  $2x^2 < 3x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 2x^2 - 3x &< 0 \\ x(2x - 3) &< 0 \\ 0 &< x < \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$



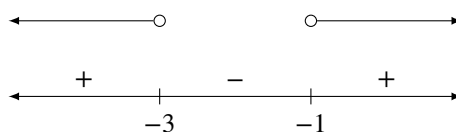
#### 15.3.2 Exercise 15.3a

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $x^4 + 4x + 3 > 0$

**Sol.**

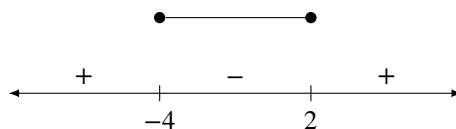
$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 4x + 3 &> 0 \\ (x + 3)(x + 1) &> 0 \\ x &< -3 \text{ or } x > -1 \end{aligned}$$



2.  $x^2 + 2x - 8 \leq 0$

**Sol.**

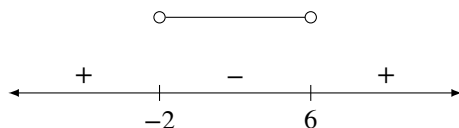
$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 2x - 8 &\leq 0 \\ (x + 4)(x - 2) &\leq 0 \\ -4 &\leq x \leq 2 \end{aligned}$$



3.  $4x + 12 > x^2$

**Sol.**

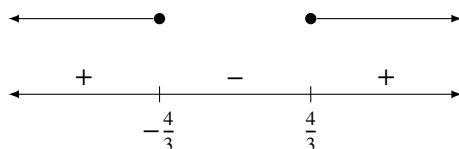
$$\begin{aligned} 4x + 12 &> x^2 \\ x^2 - 4x - 12 &< 0 \\ (x - 6)(x + 2) &< 0 \\ -2 &< x < 6 \end{aligned}$$



4.  $9x^2 \geq 16$

**Sol.**

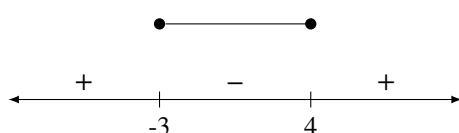
$$\begin{aligned} 9x^2 - 16 &\geq 0 \\ (3x + 4)(3x - 4) &\geq 0 \\ x &\leq -\frac{4}{3} \text{ or } x \geq \frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$



5.  $(x + 2)(x - 3) \leq 6$

**Sol.**

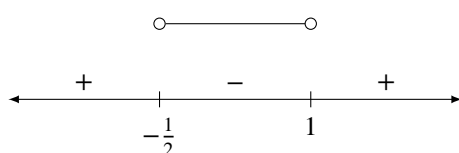
$$\begin{aligned} (x + 2)(x - 3) &\leq 6 \\ x^2 - x - 6 &\leq 0 \\ x^2 - x - 12 &\leq 0 \\ (x - 4)(x + 3) &\leq 0 \\ -3 &\leq x \leq 4 \end{aligned}$$



6.  $x(x + 2) < x(3 - x) + 1$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} x(x + 2) &< x(3 - x) + 1 \\ x^2 + 2x &< 3x - x^2 + 1 \\ 2x^2 - x - 1 &< 0 \\ (x - 1)(2x + 1) &< 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} &< x < 1 \end{aligned}$$



7.  $16x^2 - 3x + 1 \geq 5x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 16x^2 - 3x + 1 &\geq 5x \\ 16x^2 - 8x + 1 &\geq 0 \\ (4x - 1)^2 &\geq 0 \\ x &\in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$$

8.  $(x - 4)^2 + (x - 6)^2 \leq 2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} (x - 4)^2 + (x - 6)^2 &\leq 2 \\ x^2 - 8x + 16 + x^2 - 12x + 36 &\leq 2 \\ 2x^2 - 20x + 52 &\leq 2 \\ x^2 - 10x + 26 &\leq 1 \\ x^2 - 10x + 25 &\leq 0 \\ (x - 5)^2 &\leq 0 \\ x &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

9.  $1 < 4x(1 - x)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &< 4x(1 - x) \\ 4x - 4x^2 - 1 &> 0 \\ 4x^2 - 4x + 1 &< 0 \\ (2x - 1)^2 &< 0 \\ \text{No solution} \end{aligned}$$

10.  $x^2 - 3x + 9 > 3x(3 - x)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - 3x + 9 &> 3x(3 - x) \\ x^2 - 3x + 9 &> 9x - 3x^2 \\ 4x^2 - 12x + 9 &> 0 \\ (2x - 3)^2 &> 0 \\ x &\in \mathbb{R}, x \neq \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

### Solution of System of Quadratic Inequalities

To solve a system of quadratic inequalities, we need to solve each inequality separately and then find the intersection of the solutions.

#### 15.3.3 Practice 6

Solve the following system of inequalities:

1.

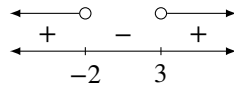
$$\begin{cases} x + 1 < 0 & (1) \\ x^2 - x - 6 > 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

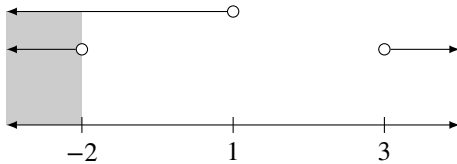
(1) :  $x < 1$

(2) :  $(x - 3)(x + 2) > 0$

$x < -2$  or  $x > 3$



$\therefore x < -2$



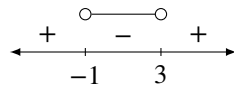
2.

$$\begin{cases} x^2 - x - 3 < 0 & (1) \\ x^2 + 3x - 4 \leq 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

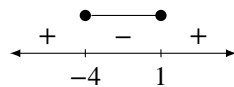
(1) :  $(x + 1)(x - 3) < 0$

$-1 < x < 3$

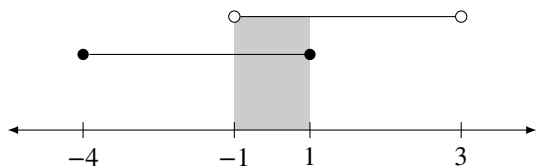


(2) :  $(x + 4)(x - 1) \leq 0$

$-4 \leq x \leq 1$



$\therefore -1 < x \leq 1$



### 15.3.4 Exercise 15.3b

3.

$$\begin{cases} 3x - 4 \geq x - 6 & (1) \\ x^2 - 3x < 2x + 14 & (2) \end{cases}$$

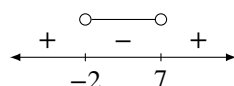
**Sol.**

(1) :  $2x \geq -2$

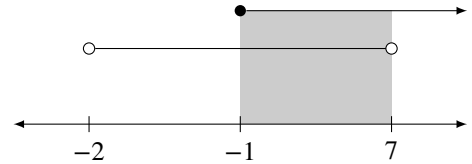
$x \geq -1$

(2) :  $(x - 7)(x + 2) < 0$

$-2 < x < 7$



$\therefore -1 \leq x < 7$



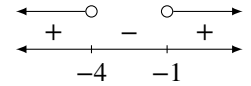
4.

$$\begin{cases} x^2 + 5x + 4 > 0 & (1) \\ x^2 + 10x + 21 \geq 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

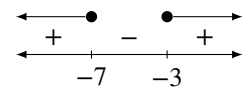
(1) :  $(x + 4)(x + 1) > 0$

$x < -4$  or  $x > -1$

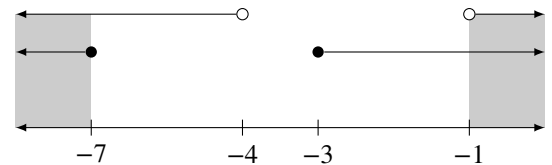


(2) :  $(x + 7)(x + 3) \geq 0$

$x \leq -7$  or  $x \geq -3$



$\therefore x \leq -7$  or  $x > -1$



5.

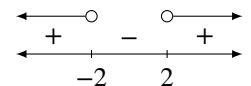
$$\begin{cases} x^2 > 4 & (1) \\ 4x(x - 1) \leq 15 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

(1) :  $x^2 - 4 > 0$

$(x + 2)(x - 2) > 0$

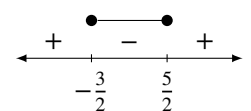
$x < -2$  or  $x > 2$



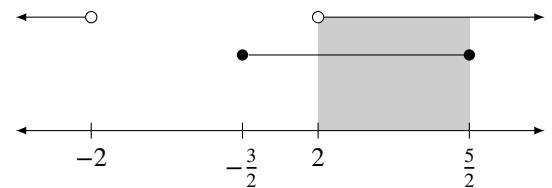
(2) :  $4x^2 - 4x - 15 \leq 0$

$(2x + 3)(2x - 5) \leq 0$

$-\frac{3}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{5}{2}$



$\therefore 2 < x \leq \frac{5}{2}$



6.

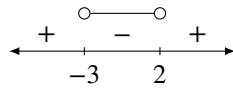
$$\begin{cases} x^2 + x < 6 & (1) \\ 4(2x + 3) < (2 - x)(1 + x) & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$(1) : x^2 + x - 6 < 0$$

$$(x+3)(x-2) < 0$$

$$-3 < x < 2$$

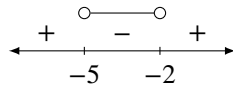


$$(2) : 8x + 12 < 2 + x - x^2$$

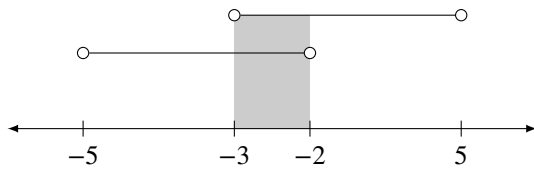
$$x^2 + 7x + 10 < 0$$

$$(x+5)(x+2) < 0$$

$$-5 < x < -2$$



$$\therefore -3 < x < -2$$



7.

$$\begin{cases} (x-1)(x+1) > 11+4x & (1) \\ x^2+4 \leq 7x-2 & (2) \end{cases}$$

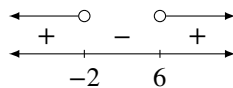
**Sol.**

$$(1) : x^2 - 1 > 11 + 4x$$

$$x^2 - 4x - 12 > 0$$

$$(x-6)(x+2) > 0$$

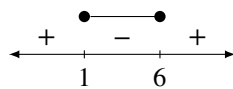
$$x < -2 \text{ or } x > 6$$



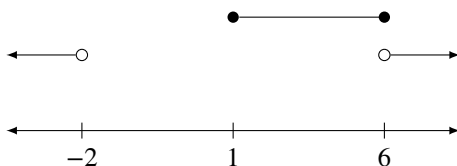
$$(2) : x^2 - 7x + 6 \leq 0$$

$$(x-6)(x-1) \leq 0$$

$$1 \leq x \leq 6$$



$\therefore$  No solution



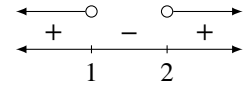
8.

$$\begin{cases} x^2 - 3x + 2 > 0 & (1) \\ x^2 + 3x \geq 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

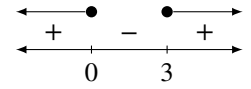
$$(1) : (x-2)(x-1) > 0$$

$$x < 1 \text{ or } x > 2$$

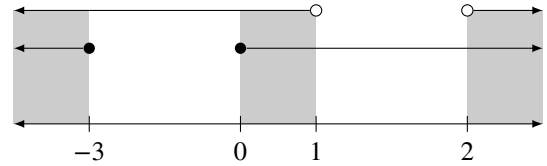


$$(2) : x(x+3) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -3 \text{ or } x \geq 0$$



$$\therefore x < -3, 0 \leq x < 1, x > 2$$



9.

$$\begin{cases} (x-3)(x+3) \geq 16 & (1) \\ x^2+3 \geq 13(x-3) & (2) \end{cases}$$

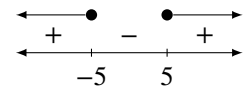
**Sol.**

$$x^2 - 9 \geq 16$$

$$x^2 - 25 \geq 0$$

$$(x+5)(x-5) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -5 \text{ or } x \geq 5$$

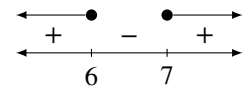


$$(2) : x^2 + 3 \geq 13x - 39$$

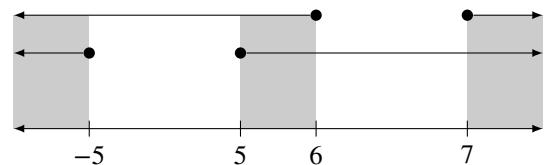
$$x^2 - 13x + 42 \geq 0$$

$$(x-7)(x-6) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq 6 \text{ or } x \geq 7$$



$$\therefore x \leq 5, 5 \leq x \leq 6, x \geq 7$$



10.

$$\begin{cases} x^2 - x - 1 \leq \frac{x-1}{6} & (1) \\ (2x-1)(x-6) \geq 13 & (2) \end{cases}$$

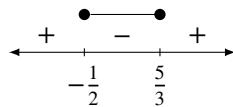
**Sol.**

$$(1) : 6x^2 - 6x - 6 \leq x - 1$$

$$6x^2 - 7x - 5 \leq 0$$

$$(3x - 5)(2x - 1) \leq 0$$

$$-\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{5}{3}$$



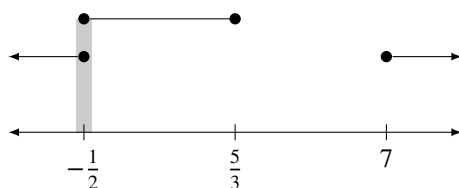
$$(2) : 2x^2 - 13x + 6 \geq 13$$

$$2x^2 - 13x - 7 \geq 0$$

$$(2x + 1)(x - 7) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -\frac{1}{2}, x \geq 7$$

$$\therefore x = -\frac{1}{2}$$



## 15.4 Solution of Linear Inequalities of Higher Degree

A linear inequality that contains a variable raised to a power greater than 2 is called a linear inequality of higher degree. To solve this type of inequality, we move all the terms with the variable to one side of the inequality, and make the coefficient of the polynomial to be positive.

### 15.4.1 Practice 7

Solve the following inequalities:

$$1. x^3 - 7x - 6 \geq 0$$

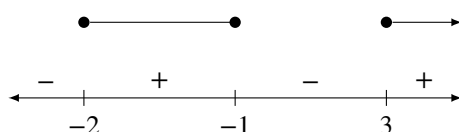
**Sol.**

$$x^3 - 7x - 6 \geq 0$$

$$(x + 2)(x^2 - 2x - 3) \geq 0$$

$$(x + 2)(x - 3)(x + 1) \geq 0$$

$$-2 \leq x \leq -1 \text{ or } x \geq 3$$



$$2. 3x^2 + 18x + 8 > 2x^3$$

**Sol.**

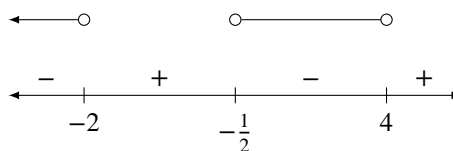
$$3x^2 + 18x + 8 - 2x^3 > 0$$

$$2x^3 - 3x^2 - 18x - 8 < 0$$

$$(x + 2)(2x^2 - 7x - 4) < 0$$

$$(x + 2)(2x + 1)(x - 4) < 0$$

$$x < -2 \text{ or } -\frac{1}{2} < x < 4$$



$$3. x^4 + x^3 \leq 3x^2 + x - 2$$

**Sol.**

$$x^4 + x^3 - 3x^2 - x + 2 \leq 0$$

$$(x + 2)[x^2(x - 1) - (x - 1)] \leq 0$$

$$(x + 2)(x + 1)(x - 1)^2 \leq 0$$

$$\text{When } x \neq 1, (x + 1)^2 > 0$$

$$(x + 2)(x + 1) \leq 0$$

$$-2 \leq x \leq -1$$

$$\text{When } x = 1, (x + 1)^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore x \text{ is the solution}$$

$$\therefore -2 \leq x \leq -1$$



$$4. x^4 - x^3 - 5x^2 - 3x > 0$$

**Sol.**

$$x^4 - x^3 - 5x^2 - 3x > 0$$

$$x(x + 1)(x^2 - 2x - 3) > 0$$

$$x(x - 3)(x + 1)^2 > 0$$

$$\text{When } x \neq -1, (x + 1)^2 > 0$$

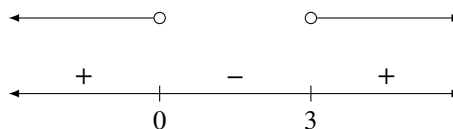
$$x(x - 3) > 0$$

$$x < 0 \text{ or } x > 3$$

$$\text{When } x = -1, (x + 1)^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore x \text{ is not the solution}$$

$$\therefore x < 0 \text{ or } x > 3, x \neq -1$$



### 15.4.2 Exercise 15.4

Solve the following inequalities:

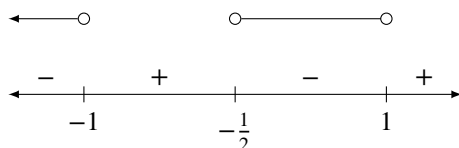


1.  $(x-1)(x+1)(2x+1) < 0$

**Sol.**

$$(x-1)(x+1)(2x+1) < 0$$

$$\therefore x < -1 \text{ or } -\frac{1}{2} < x < 1$$



2.  $(3x+6)(x+3)(5-x) \leq 0$

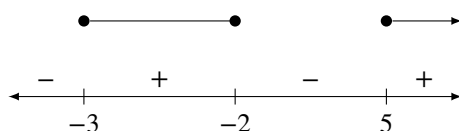
**Sol.**

$$(3x+6)(x+3)(5-x) \leq 0$$

$$-3(x+2)(x+3)(x-5) \leq 0$$

$$(x+2)(x+3)(x-5) \geq 0$$

$$\therefore -3 \leq x \leq -2 \text{ or } x \geq 5$$



3.  $4x^3 + 8x^2 - x - 2 \leq 0$

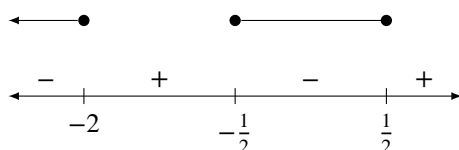
**Sol.**

$$4x^2(x+2) - (x+2) \leq 0$$

$$(4x^2 - 1)(x+2) \leq 0$$

$$(2x+1)(2x-1)(x+2) \leq 0$$

$$\therefore x \leq -2 \text{ or } -\frac{1}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$$



4.  $x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 1 \geq 0$

**Sol.**

$$x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 1 \geq 0$$

$$(x-1)^3 \geq 0$$

$$(x-1)(x-1)^2 \geq 0$$

$$\therefore (x-1)^2 \geq 0 \text{ for all real numbers } x$$

$$\therefore (x-1) \geq 0$$

$$x \geq 1$$

5.  $x^4 > 81$

**Sol.**

$$x^4 > 81$$

$$x^4 - 81 > 0$$

$$(x^2 - 9)(x^2 + 9) > 0$$

$$(x+3)(x-3)(x^2 + 9) > 0$$

$$\therefore x^2 + 9 > 0 \text{ for all real numbers } x$$

$$\therefore (x+3)(x-3) > 0$$

$$x < -3 \text{ or } x > 3$$



6.  $x^3(x+2)^2(x+3) > 0$

**Sol.**

$$x^3(x+2)^2(x+3) > 0$$

$$x^2(x+2)^2[x(x+3)] > 0$$

For all real numbers  $x$ ,

$$x^2 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq 0$$

$$(x+2)^2 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq -2$$

$$x(x+3) > 0$$

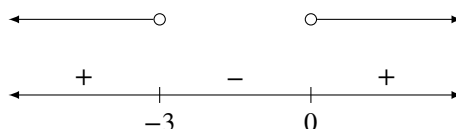
$$\therefore x < -3 \text{ or } x > 0$$

When  $x = -2$  or  $x = 0$ ,

$$x^3(x+2)^2(x+3) = 0$$

$\therefore x = 0$  and  $x = -2$  are not solution.

$$\therefore x < -3 \text{ or } x > 0, x \neq -2$$



7.  $(x-3)^5(x-1)^3(x+2) < 0$

**Sol.**

$$(x-3)^4(x-1)^2[(x-3)(x-1)(x+2)] < 0$$

For all real numbers  $x$ ,

$$(x-3)^4 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq 3$$

$$(x-1)^2 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq 1$$

$$(x-3)(x-1)(x+2) < 0$$

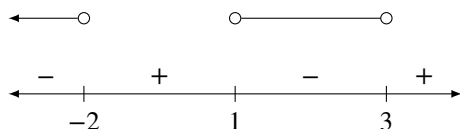
$$\therefore x < -2 \text{ or } 1 < x < 3$$

When  $x = 3$  or  $x = 1$ ,

$$(x-3)^4(x-1)^2(x+2) = 0$$

$\therefore x = 1$  and  $x = 3$  are not solution.

$$\therefore x < -2 \text{ or } 1 < x < 3$$



8.  $x^3(x-2) \geq x(2x-1)(x-2)$

**Sol.**

$$x^3(x-2) - x(2x-1)(x-2) \geq 0$$

$$x(x-2)(x^2-2x+1) \geq 0$$

$$x(x-2)(x-1)^2 \geq 0$$

When  $x \neq 1$ ,  $(x-1)^2 > 0$

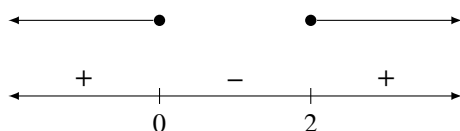
$$x(x-2) \geq 0$$

$$\therefore x \leq 0 \text{ or } x \geq 2$$

When  $x = 1$ ,  $x(x-2)(x-1)^2 = 0$

$$\therefore x = 1 \text{ is the solution}$$

$$\therefore x \leq 0 \text{ or } x \geq 2 \text{ or } x = 1$$



## 15.5 Fractional Inequalities

Inequalities that involve fractional expressions are called fractional inequalities. To solve a fractional inequality, we manipulate the inequality until the right side is zero.

### 15.5.1 Practice 8

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $\frac{x-5}{3x+1} > 2$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x-5}{3x+1} > 2$$

$$\frac{x-5}{3x+1} - 2 > 0$$

$$\frac{x-5-2(3x+1)}{3x+1} > 0$$

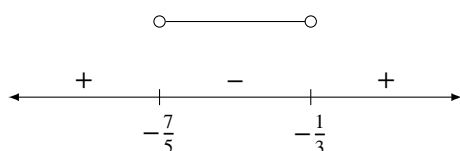
$$\frac{x-5-6x-2}{3x+1} > 0$$

$$\frac{-5x-7}{3x+1} > 0$$

$$-\frac{5x+7}{3x+1} > 0$$

$$\frac{5x+7}{3x+1} < 0$$

$$-\frac{7}{5} < x < -\frac{1}{3}$$



2.  $\frac{x+22}{x-2} < x+1$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x+22}{x-2} < x+1$$

$$\frac{x+22-(x-2)(x+1)}{x-2} < 0$$

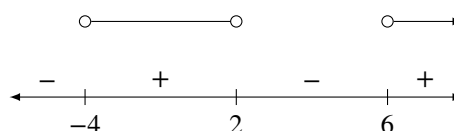
$$\frac{x+22-x^2+x+2}{x-2} < 0$$

$$\frac{-x^2+2x+24}{x-2} < 0$$

$$\frac{x^2-2x-24}{x-2} > 0$$

$$\frac{(x-6)(x+4)}{x-2} > 0$$

$$-4 < x < 2 \text{ or } x > 6$$



3.  $\frac{1}{x-3} \geq \frac{1}{2x-1}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{1}{x-3} \geq \frac{1}{2x-1}$$

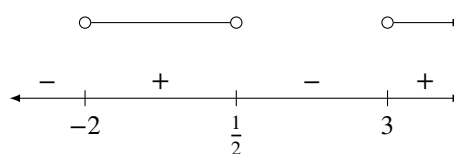
$$\frac{2x-1-x+3}{(x-3)(2x-1)} \geq 0$$

$$\frac{x+2}{(x-3)(2x-1)} \geq 0$$

When  $\frac{x+2}{(x-3)(2x-1)} = 0$ ,  $x = -2$

When  $\frac{x+2}{(x-3)(2x-1)} > 0$ ,  $-2 < x < \frac{1}{2}$  or  $x > 3$

$$\therefore -2 \leq x < \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x > 3$$



4.  $\frac{x^2-7}{1-x^2} \leq 1$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x^2 - 7}{1 - x^2} \leq 1$$

$$\frac{x^2 - 7 - 1 + x^2}{1 - x^2} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{2x^2 - 8}{(1 + x)(1 - x)} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{2(x + 2)(x - 2)}{-(x + 1)(x - 1)} \leq 0$$

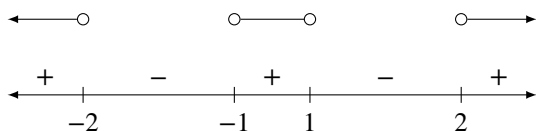
$$\frac{(x + 2)(x - 2)}{(x + 1)(x - 1)} \geq 0$$

When  $\frac{(x + 2)(x - 2)}{(x + 1)(x - 1)} = 0$ ,  $x = -2$  or  $x = 2$

When  $\frac{(x + 2)(x - 2)}{(x + 1)(x - 1)} > 0$ ,

$$x < -2 \text{ or } -1 < x < 1 \text{ or } x > 2$$

$$\therefore x \leq -2 \text{ or } -1 \leq x < 1 \text{ or } x \geq 2$$



### 15.5.2 Exercise 15.5

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $\frac{7-x}{9-x} > \frac{1}{2}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{7-x}{9-x} > \frac{1}{2}$$

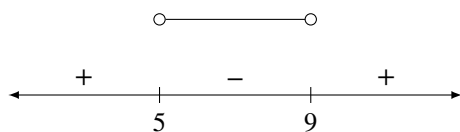
$$\frac{2(7-x) - 9 + x}{2(9-x)} > 0$$

$$\frac{14 - 2x - 9 + x}{9-x} > 0$$

$$\frac{5-x}{9-x} > 0$$

$$\frac{x-5}{x-9} > 0$$

$$\therefore x < 5 \text{ or } x > 9$$



2.  $\frac{5-x}{2} \geq \frac{3-x}{x}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{5-x}{2} \geq \frac{3-x}{x}$$

$$\frac{x(5-x) - 2(3-x)}{2x} \geq 0$$

$$\frac{5x - x^2 - 6 + 2x}{x} \geq 0$$

$$\frac{-x^2 + 7x - 6}{x} \geq 0$$

$$\frac{(x-6)(x-1)}{x} \leq 0$$

When  $\frac{(x-6)(x-1)}{x} = 0$ ,  $x = 6$  or  $x = 1$

When  $\frac{(x-6)(x-1)}{x} < 0$ ,  $x < 0$  or  $1 < x < 6$

$$\therefore x < 0 \text{ or } 1 \leq x \leq 6$$

3.  $\frac{x-4}{x+6} > \frac{1}{x}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x(x-4) - x - 6}{x(x+6)} > 0$$

$$\frac{x^2 - 4x - x - 6}{x(x+6)} > 0$$

$$\frac{x^2 - 5x - 6}{x(x+6)} > 0$$

$$\frac{(x-6)(x+1)}{x(x+6)} > 0$$

$$\therefore x < -6, -1 < x < 0 \text{ or } x > 6$$

4.  $\frac{1}{x-3} \geq \frac{1}{2x+2}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{1}{x-3} \geq \frac{1}{2x+2}$$

$$\frac{2x+2 - x+3}{2(x+1)(x-3)} \geq 0$$

$$\frac{x+5}{(x+1)(x-3)} \geq 0$$

When  $\frac{x+5}{(x+1)(x-3)} = 0$ ,  $x = -5$

$$\therefore -5 \leq x < -1 \text{ or } x > 3$$

5.  $\frac{x-1}{x+1} - \frac{1}{x-1} \leq 1$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x^2 - 2x - 1 - x - 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} \leq 1$$

$$\frac{x^2 - 3x - 2 - x^2 + 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} \leq 0$$

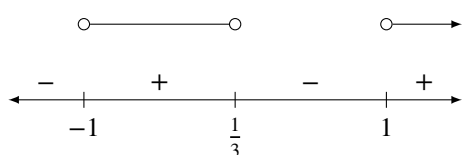
$$\frac{-3x + 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{3x - 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} \geq 0$$

$$\text{When } \frac{3x - 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} = 0, x = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\text{When } \frac{3x - 1}{(x+1)(x-1)} > 0, -1 < x < \frac{1}{3} \text{ or } x > 1$$

$$\therefore -1 < x \leq \frac{1}{3} \text{ or } x > 1$$



6.  $1 + \frac{1}{x-2} \leq \frac{x-2}{x-1}$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{x - 2 + 1}{x - 2} \leq \frac{x - 2}{x - 1}$$

$$\frac{x - 1}{x - 2} - \frac{x - 2}{x - 1} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{x^2 - 2x + 1 - x^2 + 4x - 4}{(x - 2)(x - 1)} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{2x - 3}{(x - 2)(x - 1)} \leq 0$$

$$\text{When } \frac{2x - 3}{(x - 2)(x - 1)} \leq 0, x = \frac{3}{2}$$

$$\text{When } \frac{2x - 3}{(x - 2)(x - 1)} < 0, x < 1 \text{ or } \frac{3}{2} < x < 2$$

$$\therefore x < 1 \text{ or } \frac{3}{2} \leq x < 2$$

7.  $\frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x^2 + 4x + 4} \leq 0$

**Sol.**

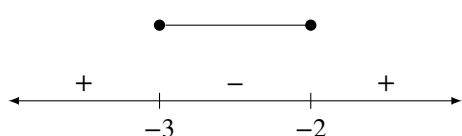
$$\frac{x^2 + x - 6}{x^2 + 4x + 4} \leq 0$$

$$\frac{(x + 3)(x - 2)}{(x + 2)^2} \leq 0$$

$$\because (x + 2)^2 \geq 0 \text{ for all numbers } x,$$

$$(x + 3)(x - 2) \leq 0 \quad (x \geq -2)$$

$$\therefore -3 \leq x \leq 2, x \neq -2$$



8.  $\frac{2x^2 - 3x + 1}{x^2 + 5x + 6} \geq 0$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{2x^2 - 3x + 1}{x^2 + 5x + 6} \geq 0$$

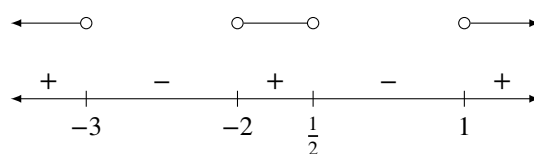
$$\frac{(x - 1)(2x - 1)}{(x + 2)(x + 3)} \geq 0$$

$$\text{When } \frac{(x - 1)(2x - 1)}{(x + 2)(x + 3)} = 0, x = 1 \text{ or } x = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{When } \frac{(x - 1)(2x - 1)}{(x + 2)(x + 3)} > 0,$$

$$x < -3 \text{ or } -2 < x < \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x > 1$$

$$\therefore x < -3 \text{ or } -2 < x \leq \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x \geq 1$$



## 15.6 Inequalities containing absolute values

Given a positive real number  $x$ , its absolute value is denoted by  $|x|$ .

$$|x| = \begin{cases} x, & \text{for } x \geq 0 \\ -x, & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Given a real number  $a$ ,

• When  $a > 0$ ,

$$|x| < a \iff -a < x < a$$

$$|x| \leq a \iff -a \leq x \leq a$$

$$|x| > a \iff x < -a \text{ or } x > a$$

$$|x| \geq a \iff x \leq -a \text{ or } x \geq a$$

• When  $a < 0$ ,

$$|x| < a \iff \text{no solution}$$

$$|x| \leq a \iff \text{no solution}$$

$$|x| > a \iff \text{all real numbers}$$

$$|x| \geq a \iff \text{all real numbers}$$

• When  $a = 0$ ,  $n$  is an integer,

$$|x - n| < 0 \iff \text{no solution}$$

$$|x - n| \leq 0 \iff x = n$$

$$|x - n| > 0 \iff \text{all real numbers except } n$$

$$|x - n| \geq 0 \iff \text{all real numbers}$$

### 15.6.1 Practice 9

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $|x| > 5$

**Sol.**

$$|x| > 5$$
$$x < -5 \text{ or } x > 5$$

2.  $|x| < 9$

**Sol.**

$$|x| < 9$$
$$-9 < x < 9$$

3.  $|x + 4| \geq 7$

**Sol.**

$$|x + 4| \geq 7$$
$$x + 4 \geq 7 \text{ or } x + 4 \leq -7$$
$$x \leq -11 \text{ or } x \geq 3$$

4.  $-1 \leq |2x - 3| < 3$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} -1 \leq |2x - 3| & (1) \\ |2x - 3| < 3 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) : |2x - 3| \geq -1$$

$x$  is any real number

$$(2) : |2x - 3| < 3$$
$$-3 < 2x - 3 < 3$$
$$0 < 2x < 6$$
$$0 < x < 3$$

$$\therefore 0 < x < 3$$

### 15.6.2 Exercise 15.6

Solve the following inequalities:

1.  $|x - 5| > 3$

**Sol.**

$$|x - 5| > 3$$
$$x - 5 < -3 \text{ or } x - 5 > 3$$
$$x < 2 \text{ or } x > 8$$

2.  $2|x + 1| - 3 > 7$

**Sol.**

$$2|x + 1| > 10$$
$$|x + 1| > 5$$
$$x + 1 < -5 \text{ or } x + 1 > 5$$
$$x < -6 \text{ or } x > 4$$

3.  $|2x - 5| < 7$

**Sol.**

$$|2x - 5| < 7$$
$$-7 < 2x - 5 < 7$$
$$-2 < 2x < 12$$
$$-1 < x < 6$$

4.  $|5x - 3| \leq 1$

**Sol.**

$$|5x - 3| \leq 1$$
$$-1 \leq 5x - 3 \leq 1$$
$$2 \leq 5x \leq 4$$
$$\frac{2}{5} \leq x \leq \frac{4}{5}$$

5.  $|2 - 3x| \geq 8$

**Sol.**

$$|2 - 3x| \geq 8$$
$$2 - 3x \leq -8 \text{ or } 2 - 3x \geq 8$$
$$-3x \leq -10 \text{ or } -3x \geq 6$$
$$x \leq -2 \text{ or } x \geq \frac{10}{3}$$

6.  $1 < |3 - 2x| \leq 9$

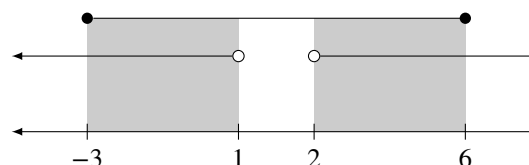
**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} |3 - 2x| > 1 & (1) \\ |3 - 2x| \leq 9 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) : 3 - 2x < -1 \text{ or } 3 - 2x > 1$$
$$-2x < -4 \text{ or } -2x > -2$$
$$x > 2 \text{ or } x < 1$$

$$(2) : -9 \leq 3 - 2x \leq 9$$
$$-12 \leq -2x \leq 6$$
$$-3 \leq x \leq 6$$

$$\therefore -3 \leq x < 1 \text{ or } 2 < x \leq 6$$



7.  $9 \leq 2|x + 2| \leq 19$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2|x + 2| \geq 9 & (3) \\ 2|x + 2| \leq 19 & (4) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) : |x + 2| \geq \frac{9}{2}$$

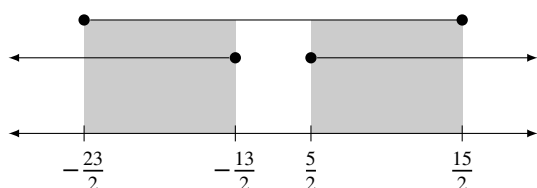
$$x + 2 \leq -\frac{9}{2} \text{ or } x + 2 \geq \frac{9}{2}$$

$$x \leq -\frac{13}{2} \text{ or } x \geq \frac{5}{2}$$

$$(2) : |x + 2| \leq \frac{19}{2}$$

$$-\frac{19}{2} \leq x + 2 \leq \frac{19}{2}$$

$$-\frac{23}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{15}{2}$$



8.  $\frac{2}{|x+1|} - 3 \geq 4$

**Sol.**

$$\frac{2}{|x+1|} \geq 7$$

$$2 \geq 7|x+1|$$

$$|x+1| \leq \frac{2}{7}$$

$$-\frac{2}{7} \leq x+1 \leq \frac{2}{7}$$

$$-\frac{9}{7} \leq x \leq -\frac{5}{7}$$

When  $x = -1$ , the fraction is undefined.

$$\therefore -\frac{9}{7} \leq x \leq -\frac{5}{7}, x \neq -1$$

## 15.7 Linear Inequalities of Two Variables

### Solution of Linear Inequalities of Two Variables

A linear inequality of two variables is inequality with two variables involved.

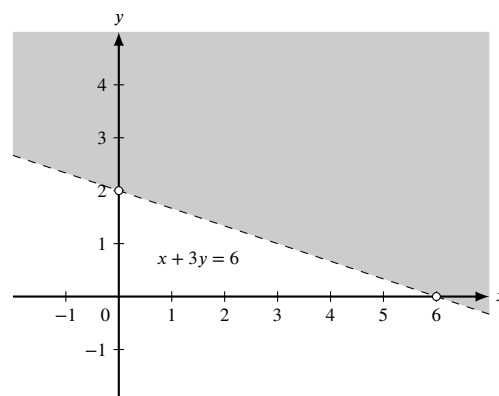
For any linear equation of two variables, there are infinitely many solutions. These solutions can be graphed in the appropriate half of a rectangular coordinate plane.

#### 15.7.1 Practice 10

Express the solution of the following linear inequalities in graph form:

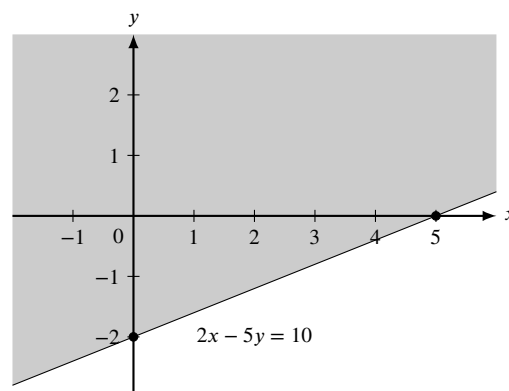
1.  $x + 3y < 6$

**Sol.**



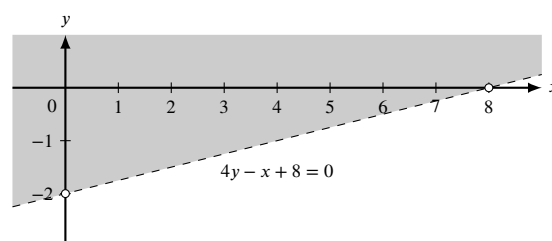
2.  $2x - 5y \leq 10$

**Sol.**

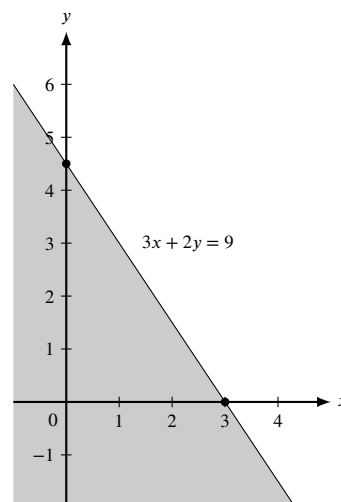


3.  $4y - x + 8 > 0$

**Sol.**



4.  $3x + 2y \leq 9$



## Solution of System of Linear Inequalities of Two Variables

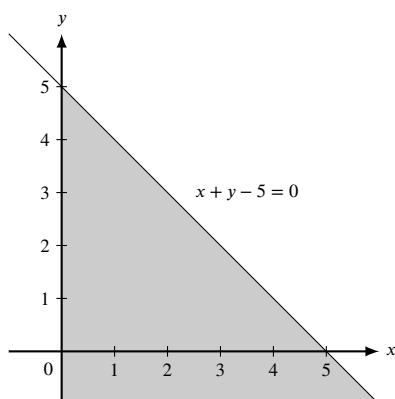
The solution of the system of linear inequalities of two variables is the intersection of the solution of individual inequalities. That is, the region bounded by the lines representing each inequality.

### 15.7.2 Practice 11

Solve the following system of inequalities:

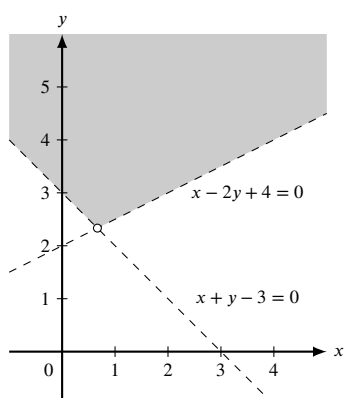
$$1. \begin{cases} x \geq 0 \\ x + y - 5 \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



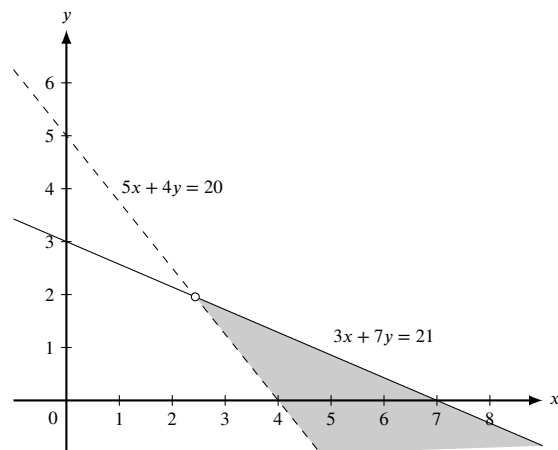
$$2. \begin{cases} x + y - 3 > 0 \\ x - 2y + 4 < 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



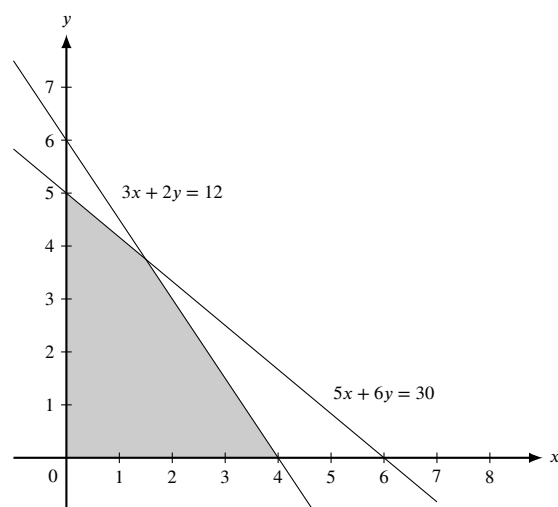
$$3. \begin{cases} 3x + 7y \leq 21 \\ 5x + 4y > 20 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



$$4. \begin{cases} 5x + 6y \leq 30 \\ 3x + 2y \leq 12 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

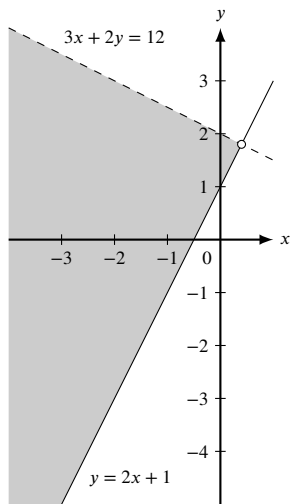


### 15.7.3 Exercise 15.7

Solve the following system of inequalities:

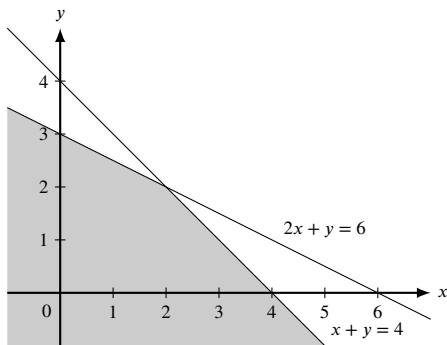
$$1. \begin{cases} y \geq 2x + 1 \\ x + 2y < 4 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



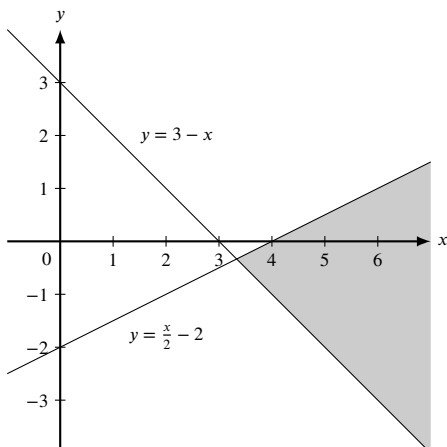
2. 
$$\begin{cases} x + y \leq 4 \\ x + 2y \leq 6 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



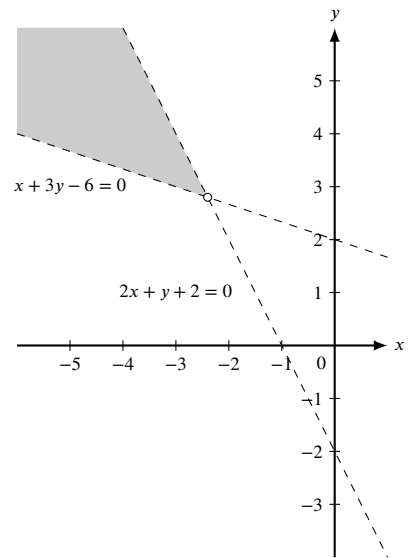
3. 
$$\begin{cases} y \geq 3 - x \\ y \leq \frac{x}{2} - 2 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



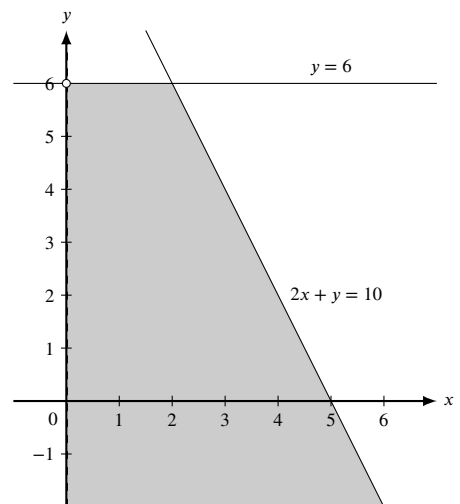
4. 
$$\begin{cases} x + 3y - 6 > 0 \\ 2x + y + 2 < 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



5. 
$$\begin{cases} x > 0 \\ 2x + y \leq 10 \\ y \leq 6 \end{cases}$$

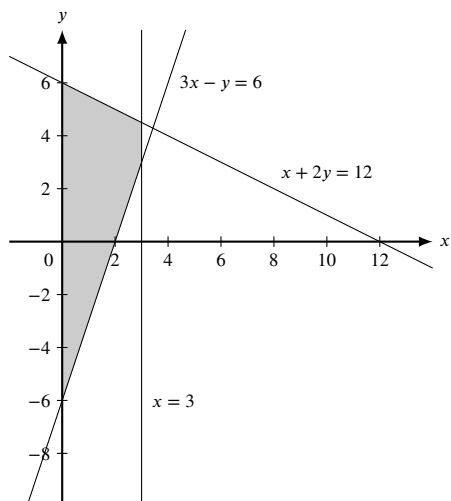
**Sol.**



6. 
$$\begin{cases} x + 2y \leq 12 \\ 3x - y \leq 6 \\ 0 \leq x \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

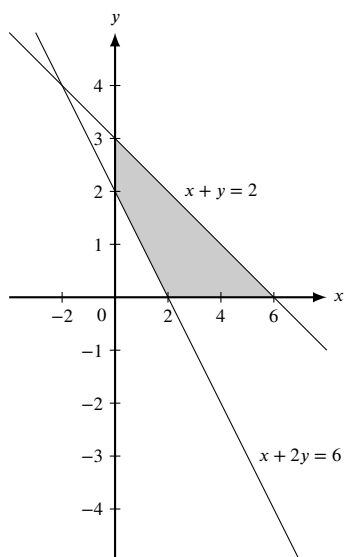
**Sol.**



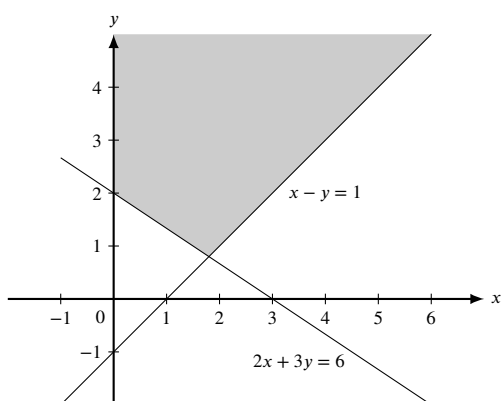


7. 
$$\begin{cases} x + y \geq 2 \\ x + 2y \leq 6 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

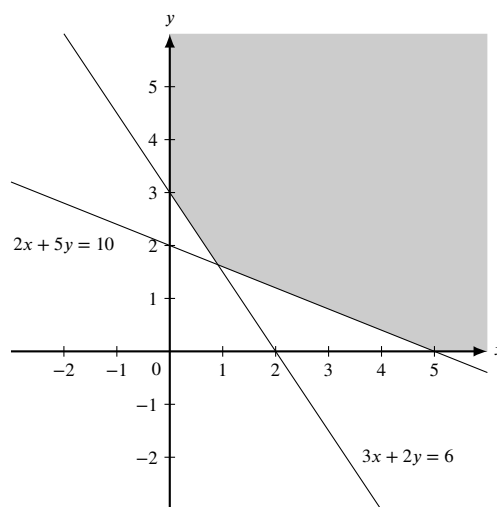
**Sol.**



8. 
$$\begin{cases} x - y \leq 1 \\ 2x + 3y \geq 6 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$



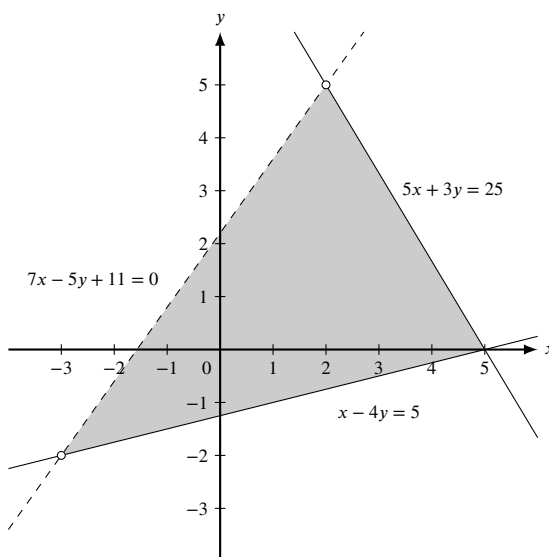
Write a system of inequalities that represents the region bounded by the following graphs:



9.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 2x + 5y \geq 10 \\ 3x - 2y \geq 6 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$



10.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 7x - 5y + 11 > 0 \\ 5x + 3y \leq 25 \\ x - 4y \leq 5 \end{cases}$$

## 15.8 Linear Programming

### 15.8.1 Practice 12

Find the maximum and minimum value of  $z = 8x - 10y$  subject to the following constraints:

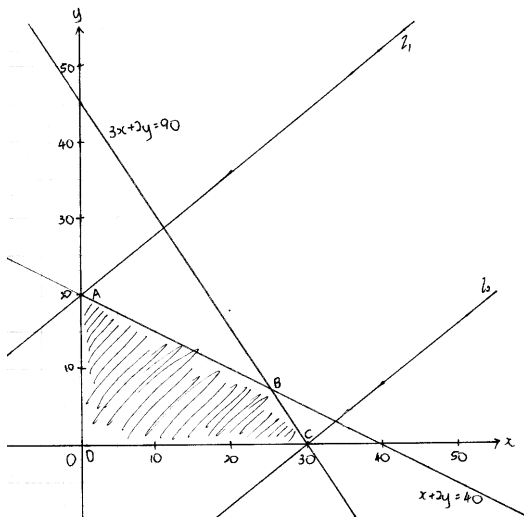
$$\begin{cases} x + 2y \leq 40 \\ 3x + 2y \leq 90 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

Objective function:  $z = 8x - 10y$

$$10y = 8x - z$$

$$y = \frac{4}{5}x - \frac{z}{10}$$



When  $y = \frac{4}{5}x - \frac{z}{10}$  translates towards bottom right of the feasible region, the value of  $z$  increases. Therefore, the maximum value of the objective function is the value of  $z$  in  $l_2$ . The point of intersection  $C$  of  $l_2$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $C$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x + 2y = 90$  and  $y = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2y = 90 \\ y = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$D = (30, 0)$$

$$z_{\max} = 8(30) - 0 = 240$$

When  $y = x - z$  translates towards top left of the feasible region, the value of  $z$  decreases. Therefore, the minimum value of the objective function is the value of  $z$  in  $l_1$ . The point of intersection  $A$  of  $l_1$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $A$  is also the

point of intersection of  $x + 2y = 40$  and  $x = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 40 \\ x = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$A = (0, 20)$$

$$z_{\min} = 0 - 10(20) = -200$$

### 15.8.2 Exercise 15.8

- Find the minimum value of  $z = 10x + 12y$ , subject to the following constraints:

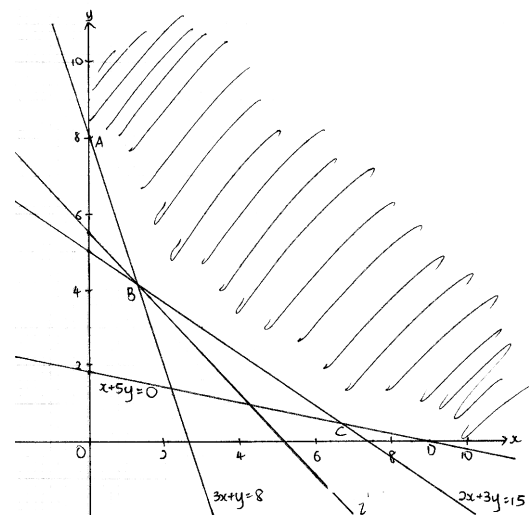
$$\begin{cases} 3x + y \geq 8 \\ 2x + 3y \geq 15 \\ x + 5y \geq 9 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

Objective function:  $z = 10x + 12y$

$$12y = -10x + z$$

$$y = -\frac{5}{6}x + \frac{z}{12}$$



The minimum value of the objective function is the value of  $z$  in  $l_1$ . The point of intersection  $B$  of  $l_1$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $B$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x + y = 8$  and  $2x + 3y = 15$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 3x + y = 8 \\ 2x + 3y = 15 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
2x + 3(8 - 3x) &= 15 \\
2x + 24 - 9x &= 15 \\
-7x &= -9 \\
x &= \frac{9}{7} \\
\frac{27}{7} + y &= 8 \\
y &= 8 - \frac{27}{7} = \frac{29}{7} \\
B &= \left(\frac{9}{7}, \frac{29}{7}\right) \\
z_{\min} &= 10\left(\frac{9}{7}\right) + 12\left(\frac{29}{7}\right) \\
&= 62\frac{4}{7}
\end{aligned}$$

2. A housing developer owns a tract of land that is  $2,400m^2$  in area and a construction capital of \$4,600,000. The developer wishes to build two types of houses: type A and type B. Given that each type A house requires  $150m^2$  of land and \$250,000 of construction fees, can earn \$55,000 in profit; and each type B house requires  $200m^2$  of land and \$400,000 of construction fees, can earn \$80,000 in profit. Assume that all houses built can be sold, how many of each type of house should be built to maximize the profit? Find the maximum profit.

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of type A houses and  $y$  be the number of type B houses.

	A (x units)	B (y units)	Limit
Area ( $m^2$ )	$150x$	$200y$	2,400
Cost(\$)	$250,000x$	$400,000y$	4,600,000
Profit(\$)	$55,000x$	$80,000y$	

The total profit is  $z = 55,000x + 80,000y$ , this is the objective function. According to the descriptions above, we find the maximum value of it.

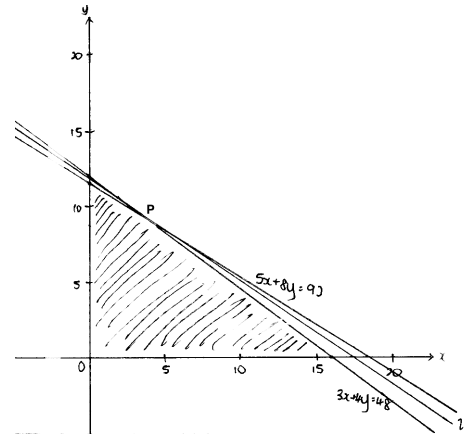
The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases}
150x + 200y \leq 2,400 \\
250,000x + 400,000y \leq 4,600,000 \\
x \geq 0 \\
y \geq 0
\end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases}
3x + 4y \leq 48 \\
5x + 8y \leq 92 \\
x \geq 0 \\
y \geq 0
\end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 55,000x + 80,000y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its maximum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x + 4y = 48$  and  $5x + 8y = 92$ ,

$$\begin{cases}
3x + 4y = 48 & (1) \\
5x + 8y = 92 & (2)
\end{cases}$$

$$(1) \times 2 : 6x + 8y = 96$$

$$(1) - (2) : x = 4$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 4 \text{ into } (1) : 12 + 4y = 48$$

$$y = 9$$

$$P = (4, 9)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
z_{\max} &= 55,000(4) + 80,000(9) \\
&= 940,000
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the maximum profit of \$940,000 can be obtained by building 4 type A houses and 9 type B houses.

3. One has a building lot that is  $180m^2$  in area. He plans to pay \$7,000 to split the lot into two type of rooms and rent them out to students: each bigger room is  $20m^2$  in area and can accommodate 5 students with a monthly rent of \$225 per student; each smaller room is  $15m^2$  in area and can accommodate 3 students with a monthly rent of \$250 per student. The renovation cost for each bigger room is \$700 and for each smaller room is \$600. Assume that the source of tenants is stable, how many of each type of room should be divided into to maximize the profit? Find the maximum profit.

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of bigger rooms and  $y$  be the number of smaller rooms.

	Big (x unit)	Small (y unit)	Limit
Area ( $m^2$ )	$20x$	$15y$	180
Cost(\$)	$700x$	$600y$	7,000
Profit(\$)	$1125x$	$750y$	

The total profit is  $z = 1125x + 750y$ , this is the objective function. According to the descriptions above, we find the maximum value of it.

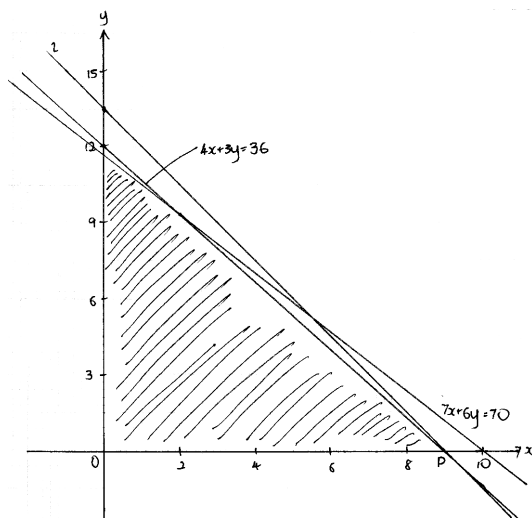
The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} 20x + 15y \leq 180 \\ 700x + 600y \leq 7,000 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 4x + 3y \leq 36 \\ 7x + 6y \leq 70 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 1125x + 750y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its maximum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $4x + 3y = 36$  and  $y = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 4x + 3y = 36 \\ y = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$P = (9, 0)$$

$$z_{\max} = 1125(9) + 750(0) = 10,125$$

Thus, the maximum profit of \$10,125 can be obtained by splitting the building lot into 9 bigger rooms.

4. Ms. Tan is a tuition teacher who teaches Mathematic subject to junior 3 and senior 3 students. There are a total of 5 students in each junior 3 class, each student pays tuition fees of \$50 per month, and each class is held for 4 hours per week. There are a total of 3 students in each senior 3 class, each student pays tuition fees of \$120 per month, and each class is held for 6 hours per week. Assume that here is a stable source of students, but the number of junior 3 students cannot exceed 2 times the number of senior 3 students. If Ms. Tan is willing to earn at least \$6,600 per month, how many junior 3 and senior 3 classes should she held per week to minimize the number hours she has to teach? What's the minimum number of hours she has to teach?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of junior 3 classes and  $y$  be the number of senior 3 classes.

The number of hours she has to teach is  $z = 4x + 6y$ , this is the objective function. According to the descriptions above, we find the minimum value of it.

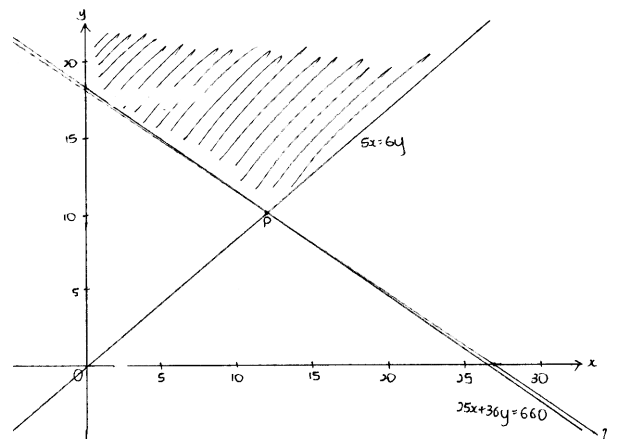
The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} 5 \times 50 \times x + 3 \times 120 \times y \geq 6,600 \\ 5x \leq 2 \times 3y \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 25x + 36y \geq 660 \\ 5x \leq 6y \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 4x + 6y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its minimum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $25x + 36y = 660$  and  $5x = 6y$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 25x + 36y = 660 & (1) \\ 5x = 6y & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Sub (2) into (1) : } 25x + 30x = 660$$

$$55x = 660$$

$$x = 12$$

$$\text{Sub } x = 12 \text{ into (2) : } 60 = 6y$$

$$y = 10$$

$$P = (12, 10)$$

$$z_{\min} = 4(12) + 6(10) = 108$$

Thus, Ms. Tan should hold 12 junior 3 classes and 10 senior 3 classes per week, and she has to teach for at least 108 hours per week.

5. A company can produce a product with two types of raw materials. Each ton of the first type of raw material cost \$300, freight cost \$50, and can produce 90kg of the product; each ton of the second type of raw material cost \$700, freight cost \$40, and can produce 100kg of the product. If the company has a total of \$2,100 to spend on raw materials and \$200 to spend on freight every day, what's the maximum amount of product that can be produced every day? How many tons of each type of raw material should be used?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of tons of the first type of raw material and  $y$  be the number of tons of the second type of raw material.

	M1 (x t)	M2 (y t)	Limit
Cost (\$)	300x	700y	2,100
Freight(\$)	50x	40y	200
Product(kg)	90x	100y	

The objective function is  $z = 90x + 100y$ , which is the amount of product that can be produced every day. According to the descriptions above, we find the maximum value of it.

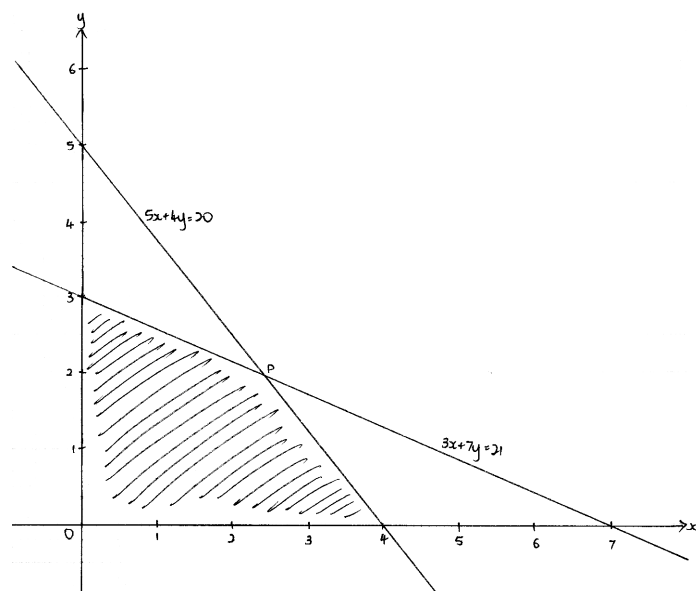
The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} 300x + 700y \leq 2,100 \\ 50x + 40y \leq 200 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 7y \leq 21 \\ 5x + 4y \leq 20 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 90x + 100y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its maximum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x + 7y = 21$  and  $5x + 4y = 20$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 7y = 21 & (1) \\ 5x + 4y = 20 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) \times 5 : 15x + 35y = 105$$

$$(2) \times 3 : 15x + 12y = 60$$

$$(1) - (2) : 23y = 45$$

$$y = \frac{45}{23}$$

$$= 1.96$$

$$\text{Sub } y = \frac{45}{23} \text{ into (2) : } 5x + \frac{180}{23} = 20$$

$$5x = \frac{280}{23}$$

$$x = \frac{56}{23}$$

$$= 2.43$$

$$P = (2.43, 1.96)$$

$$z_{\max} = 90 \left( \frac{56}{23} \right) + 100 \left( \frac{45}{23} \right) \\ = 414.78$$

Thus, the company should use 2.43 tons of the first type of raw material and 1.96 tons of the second type of raw material, and the maximum amount of product that can be produced every day is 414.78kg.

6. A factory uses four types of raw materials:  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  to produce two types of products:  $A$  and  $B$ , the stock of raw materials  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  are 22, 14, 15, and 18 units respectively. Given that the required amount of raw materials  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  for producing one unit of product  $A$  is 3, 2, 0, 3 units respectively, and the required amount of raw materials  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  for producing one unit of product  $B$  is 2, 1, 3, 0 units respectively. If each product  $A$  can make a profit of \$7,000 and each product  $B$  can make a profit of \$5,000, how many units of each product should be produced to maximize the profit with the current stock of raw materials?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of units of product  $A$  and  $y$  be the number of units of product  $B$ .

	A (x unit)	B (y unit)	Limit
$a$ (unit)	$3x$	$2y$	22
$b$ (unit)	$2x$	$y$	14
$c$ (unit)	$0x$	$3y$	15
$d$ (unit)	$3x$	$0y$	18
Profit (\$)	$7,000x$	$5,000y$	

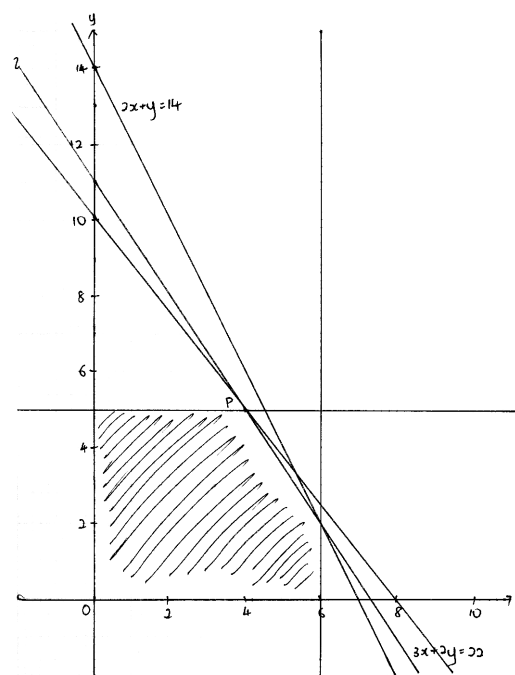
The objective function is  $z = 7,000x + 5,000y$ , which is the profit. According to the descriptions above, we find the maximum value of it. The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2y \leq 22 \\ 2x + y \leq 14 \\ 3y \leq 15 \\ 3x \leq 18 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2y \leq 22 \\ 2x + y \leq 14 \\ 0 \leq y \leq 5 \\ 0 \leq x \leq 6 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 7,000x + 5,000y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its maximum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x + 2y = 22$  and  $y = 5$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2y = 22 \\ y = 5 \end{cases} \\ P = (4, 5)$$

Thus, the company should produce 4 units of product  $A$  and 5 units of product  $B$  to maximize the profit.

7. Mr. Wong is willing to mix two types of drinks: *A* and *B* to produce a new drink. Drink *A* cost \$2 per litre, contains 20mg of vitamin *C*, 3mg of coloring agent, and 150g of sugar; drink *B* cost \$4 per litre, contains 35mg of vitamin *C*, 2mg of coloring agent, and 100g of sugar. Mr. Tan is willing to mix at least 50 litres of the new drink, but each litre of the new drink has to contain at least 30mg of vitamin *C*, the total amount of sugar cannot exceed 6kg, and the total cost cannot exceed \$180. How many litres of each type of drink should be mixed to minimize the amount of coloring agent?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of litres of drink *A* and  $y$  be the number of litres of drink *B*.

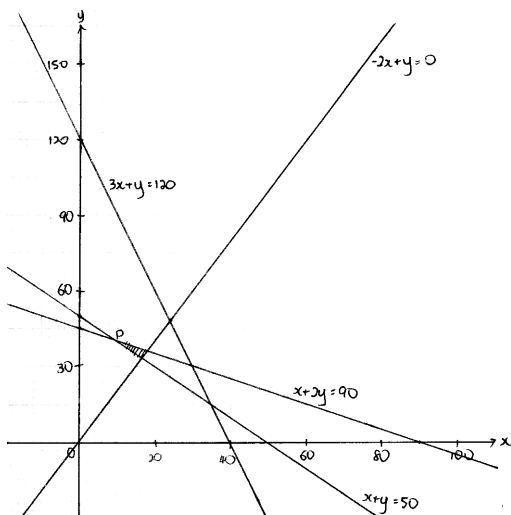
The objective function is  $z = 3x + 2y$ , which is the amount of coloring agent. According to the descriptions above, we find the minimum value of it. The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} x + y \geq 50 \\ 20x + 35y \geq 30(x + y) \\ 150x + 100y \leq 6,000 \\ 2x + 4y \leq 180 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} x + y \geq 50 \\ -2x + y \geq 0 \\ 3x + 2y \leq 120 \\ x + 2y \leq 90 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 3x + 2y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its minimum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $x + y = 50$  and  $x + 2y = 90$ ,

$$\begin{cases} x + y = 50 \\ x + 2y = 90 \end{cases}$$

$$P = (10, 40)$$

Thus, the company should produce 10 litres of drink *A* and 40 litres of drink *B* to minimize the amount of coloring agent.

8. A bakery bakes two types of cake: *A* and *B*. The ingredients required for baking one cake of type *A* is 1kg of flour, 5 eggs, and 300g of sugar; the ingredients required for baking one cake of type *B* is 800g of flour, 8 eggs, and 200g of sugar. The bakery has 3 bakers, each of them works for at least 8 hours per day, and the total time required for each baker to bake one cake of type *A* and *B* is 40 minutes and 50 minutes respectively. If the bakery has to bake at least 32 cakes every day, and the everyday supply of ingredients is limited to 220 eggs and 9kg of sugar. Due to the shortage of flour, the bakery needs to lower the usage of it. How many cakes of each type should be baked to minimize the usage of flour? What's the minimum amount of flour used?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of cakes of type *A* and  $y$  be the number of cakes of type *B*.

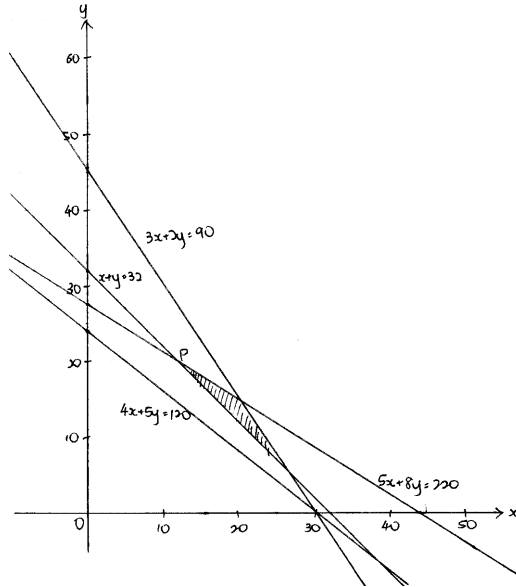
The objective function is  $z = x + 0.8y$ , which is the amount of flour used. According to the descriptions above, we find the minimum value of it. The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} 5x + 8y \leq 220 \\ 300x + 200y \leq 9,000 \\ 40x + 50y \geq 480 \\ x + y \geq 32 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying the constraints, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 5x + 8y \leq 220 \\ 3x + 2y \leq 90 \\ 4x + 5y \geq 120 \\ x + y \geq 32 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



Let  $l : 4x + 5y = z$ .

When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its minimum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $x + y = 32$  and  $5x + 8y = 220$ ,

$$\begin{cases} x + y = 32 & (1) \\ 5x + 8y = 220 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) : y = 32 - x(3)$$

$$\text{Sub (3) into (2) : } 5x + 8(32 - x) = 220$$

$$5x + 256 - 8x = 220$$

$$-3x = -36$$

$$x = 12$$

$$y = 20$$

$$P = (12, 20)$$

$$z = 12 + 0.8(20) = 28$$

Thus, the bakery should bake 12 cakes of type  $A$  and 20 cakes of type  $B$  to minimize the amount of flour used. The minimum amount of flour used is 28kg

## 15.9 Revision Exercise 15

Compare the algebraic expressions in the following questions (Question 1 to 2):

1.  $(x - 3)(4 - x)$  and  $(6 - x)(x - 1)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & (x - 3)(4 - x) - (6 - x)(x - 1) \\ &= -x^2 + 7x - 12 - (-x^2 + 7x - 6) \\ &= -x^2 + 7x - 12 + x^2 - 7x + 6 \\ &= -6 < 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (x - 3)(4 - x) < (6 - x)(x - 1)$$

2.  $6 - x^2$  and  $4x - 2x^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} & 6 - x^2 - (4x - 2x^2) \\ &= 6x - x^2 - 4x + 2x^2 \\ &= x^2 - 2x \\ &= (x - 1)^2 + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (x - 1)^2 + 1 > 0$$

$$\therefore (x - 1)^2 + 1 > 0$$

$$\therefore 6 - x^2 > 4x - 2x^2$$

Solve the following inequalities (Question 3 to 16):

3.  $4(x - 1) > x + 6$

**Sol.**

$$4(x - 1) > x + 6$$

$$4x - 4 > x + 6$$

$$3x > 10$$

$$x > \frac{10}{3}$$

4.  $3(3 - x) \geq 2(x + 3)$

**Sol.**

$$3(3 - x) \geq 2(x + 3)$$

$$9 - 3x \geq 2x + 6$$

$$-5x \geq -3$$

$$5x \leq 3$$

$$x \leq \frac{3}{5}$$

5.  $3 - \frac{x-1}{4} \geq 2 + \frac{3(x+1)}{8}$

**Sol.**

$$3 - \frac{x-1}{4} \geq 2 + \frac{3(x+1)}{8}$$

$$24 - 2(x-1) \geq 16 + 3(x+1)$$

$$24 - 2x + 2 \geq 16 + 3x + 3$$

$$26 - 2x \geq 19 + 3x$$

$$-5x \geq -7$$

$$5x \leq 7$$

$$x \leq \frac{7}{5}$$

6.  $x - \frac{x-1}{2} \leq \frac{2x-1}{3} + \frac{x+1}{2}$



**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x - \frac{x-1}{2} &\leq \frac{2x-1}{3} + \frac{x+1}{2} \\6x - 3(x-1) &\leq 2(2x-1) + 3(x+1) \\6x - 3x + 3 &\leq 4x - 2 + 3x + 3 \\3x + 3 &\leq 7x + 1 \\-4x &\leq -2 \\4x &\geq 2 \\x &\geq \frac{1}{2}\end{aligned}$$

7.  $-1 < \frac{1}{2}x + 3 < 7$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}-1 &< \frac{1}{2}x + 3 < 7 \\-2 &< x + 6 < 14 \\-8 &< x < 8\end{aligned}$$

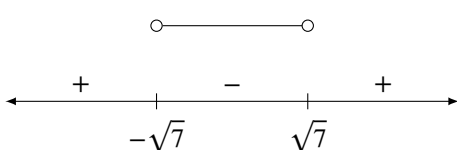
8.  $-\frac{3}{2} < 1 - 3x \leq 8$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}-\frac{3}{2} &< 1 - 3x \leq 8 \\-3 &< 2 - 6x \leq 16 \\-5 &< -6x \leq 14 \\-14 &\leq 6x < 5 \\-\frac{7}{3} &\leq x < \frac{5}{6}\end{aligned}$$

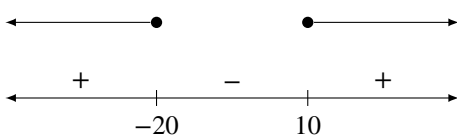
9.  $x^2 < 7$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 &< 7 \\x^2 - 7 &< 0 \\(x + \sqrt{7})(x - \sqrt{7}) &< 0 \\-\sqrt{7} &< x < \sqrt{7}\end{aligned}$$


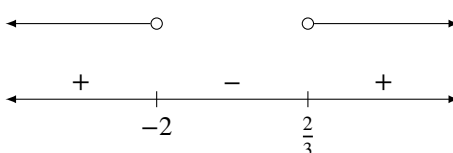
10.  $x^2 + 10x - 200 \geq 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + 10x - 200 &\geq 0 \\(x + 20)(x - 10) &\geq 0 \\x &\leq -20 \text{ or } x \geq 10\end{aligned}$$


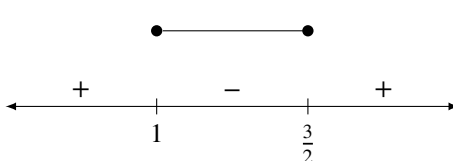
11.  $4 < 3x^2 + 4x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}4 &< 3x^2 + 4x \\3x^2 + 4x - 4 &> 0 \\(3x - 2)(x + 2) &> 0 \\x &< -2 \text{ or } x > \frac{2}{3}\end{aligned}$$


12.  $5x - 3 \geq 2x^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}5x - 3 &\geq 2x^2 \\2x^2 - 5x + 3 &\leq 0 \\(2x - 3)(x - 1) &\leq 0 \\1 &\leq x \leq \frac{3}{2}\end{aligned}$$


13.  $x^2 - x(x - 6) > 5(x - 1)$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 - x(x - 6) &> 5(x - 1) \\x^2 - x^2 + 6x &> 5x - 5 \\6x &> 5x - 5 \\x &> -5\end{aligned}$$

14.  $(2x + 1)^2 + 5 \leq 4(x + 2)^2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(2x + 1)^2 + 5 &\leq 4(x + 2)^2 \\4x^2 + 4x + 1 + 5 &\leq 4(x^2 + 4x + 4) \\4x^2 + 4x + 6 &\leq 4x^2 + 16x + 16 \\-12x &\leq 10 \\12x &\geq -10 \\x &\geq -\frac{5}{6}\end{aligned}$$

15.  $9x^2 + 2 \leq 12x - 2$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}9x^2 + 2 &\leq 12x - 2 \\9x^2 - 12x + 4 &\leq 0 \\(3x - 2)^2 &\leq 0 \\x &= \frac{2}{3}\end{aligned}$$

16.  $4(x^2 + 7) > 3 - 20x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}4(x^2 + 7) &> 3 - 20x \\4x^2 + 28 &> 3 - 20x \\4x^2 + 20x - 25 &> 0 \\(2x + 5)^2 &> 0 \\x \in \mathbb{R}, x &\neq -\frac{5}{2}\end{aligned}$$

Solve the following system of inequalities (Question 17 to 28):

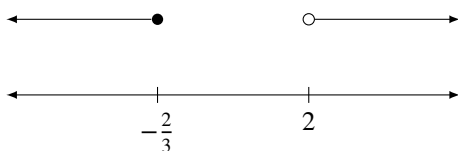
17.

$$\begin{cases} 3x + 2 \leq 0 \\ 4 - x < x \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 3x &\leq -2 \\x &\leq -\frac{2}{3} \\(2) : -2x &< -4 \\x &> 2\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  No solution.



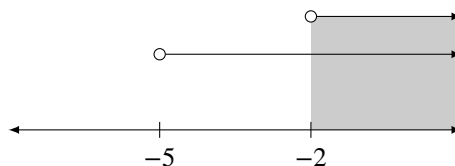
18.

$$\begin{cases} x + 4 > -x \\ \frac{3x - 1}{2} < 2(x + 1) \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 2x &> -4 \\x &> -2 \\(2) : 3x - 1 &< 4(x + 1) \\3x - 1 &< 4x + 4 \\-x &< 5 \\x &> -5\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x > -2$$



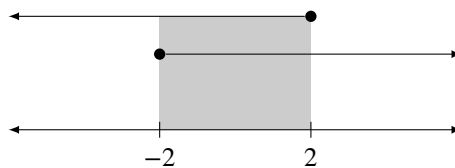
19.

$$\begin{cases} x - 3 \leq 5 - 3x \\ 4 + (2x - 1) \leq 4x + 7 \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 4x &\leq 8 \\x &\leq 2 \\(2) : 3 + 2x &\leq 4x + 7 \\-2x &\leq 4 \\x &\geq -2\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore -2 \leq x \leq 2$$



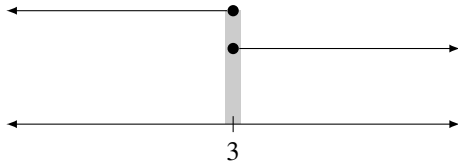
20.

$$\begin{cases} 4x - 5 \geq 2x + 1 \\ x + \frac{2}{3} \leq \frac{2x + 5}{3} \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}(1) : 2x &\geq 6 \\x &\geq 3 \\(2) : 3x + 2 &\leq 2x + 5 \\x &\leq 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x = 3$$



21.  $5 < 2x - 7 < x + 1$

**Sol.**

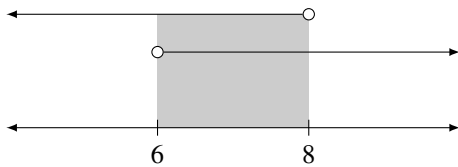
$$\begin{cases} 5 < 2x - 7 & (1) \\ 2x - 7 < x + 1 & (2) \end{cases}$$

(1) :  $12 < 2x$

$x > 6$

(2) :  $x < 8$

$\therefore 6 < x < 8$



22.  $4 < 6 + 2x \leq 4x$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} 4 < 6 + 2x & (1) \\ 6 + 2x \leq 4x & (2) \end{cases}$$

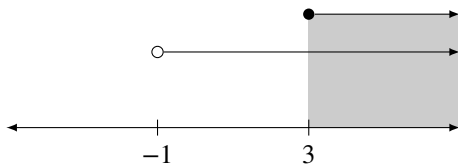
(1) :  $-2 < 2x$

$x > -1$

(2) :  $6 \leq 2x$

$x \geq 3$

$\therefore x \geq 3$



23.

$$\begin{cases} x - \frac{1}{2} \geq 1 - \frac{x}{2} & (1) \\ 2 - \frac{x}{3} < \frac{2x}{3} - 3 & (2) \\ \frac{x}{3} + \frac{1}{4} \geq \frac{x}{2} - \frac{3}{4} & (3) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

(1) :  $2x - 1 \geq 2 - x$

$3x \geq 3$

$x \geq 1$

(2) :  $6 - x < 2x - 9$

$-3x < -15$

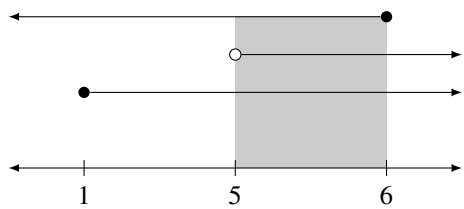
$x > 5$

(3) :  $4x + 3 \geq 6x - 9$

$-2x \geq -12$

$x \leq 6$

$\therefore 5 < x \leq 6$



24.

$$\begin{cases} x + \frac{13}{2} > \frac{7-x}{2} & (1) \\ 2\left(x + \frac{1}{3}\right) < 2 - x & (2) \\ x^2 \geq \frac{5x}{2} & (3) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

(1) :  $2x + 13 > 7 - x$

$3x > -6$

$x > -2$

(2) :  $2x + \frac{2}{3} < 2 - x$

$6x + 2 < 6 - 3x$

$9x < 4$

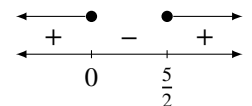
$x < \frac{4}{9}$

(3) :  $2x^2 \geq 5x$

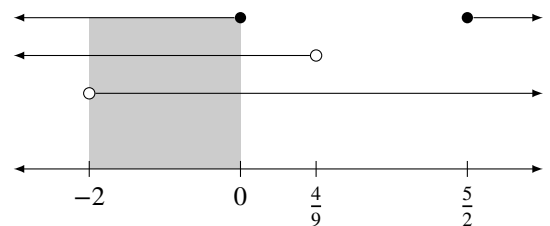
$2x^2 - 5x \geq 0$

$x(2x - 5) \geq 0$

$x \leq 0$  or  $x \geq \frac{5}{2}$



$\therefore -2 < x \leq 0$



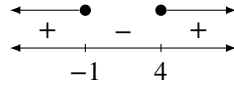
25.

$$\begin{cases} x^2 - 3x - 4 \geq 0 & (1) \\ 2x^2 - x - 6 > 0 & (2) \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

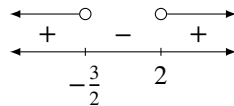
$$(1) : (x - 4)(x + 1) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -1 \text{ or } x \geq 4$$

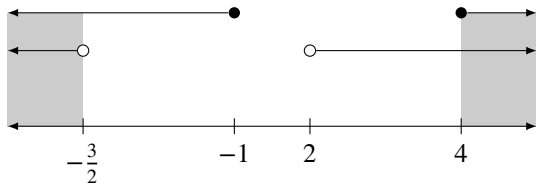


$$(2) : (2x + 3)(x - 2) > 0$$

$$x < -\frac{3}{2} \text{ and } x > 2$$



$$\therefore x < -\frac{3}{2} \text{ or } x \geq 4$$



26.

$$\begin{cases} (2x - 1)(x - 2) \leq 8x - 9 & (1) \\ 3(x^2 - 2) < 7x & (2) \end{cases}$$

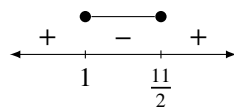
**Sol.**

$$(1) : 2x^2 - 5x + 2 \leq 8x - 9$$

$$2x^2 - 13x + 11 \leq 0$$

$$(2x - 11)(x - 1) \leq 0$$

$$1 \leq x \leq \frac{11}{2}$$

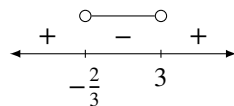


$$(2) : 3x^2 - 6 < 7x$$

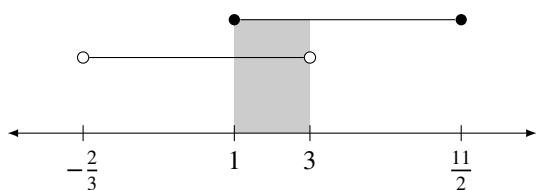
$$3x^2 - 7x - 6 < 0$$

$$(3x + 2)(x - 3) < 0$$

$$-\frac{2}{3} < x < 3$$



$$\therefore 1 \leq x < 3$$



27.

$$\begin{cases} 2(x^2 + 3) \geq 7 - x & (1) \\ (x + 3)^2 > 1 & (2) \end{cases}$$

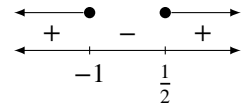
**Sol.**

$$(1) : 2x^2 + 6 \geq 7 - x$$

$$2x^2 + x - 1 \geq 0$$

$$(2x - 1)(x + 1) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -1 \text{ or } x \geq \frac{1}{2}$$

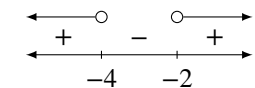


$$(2) : x^2 + 6x + 9 > 1$$

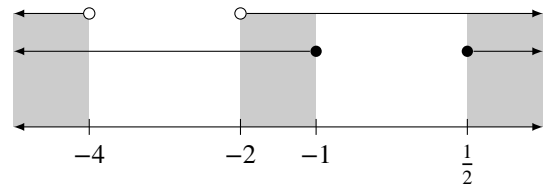
$$x^2 + 6x + 8 > 0$$

$$(x + 4)(x + 2) > 0$$

$$x < -4 \text{ or } x > -2$$



$$\therefore x < -4 \text{ or } -2 < x \leq -1 \text{ or } x \geq \frac{1}{2}$$



28.

$$\begin{cases} x(x - 1) \leq 2 & (1) \\ x(x + 1) \geq 6 & (2) \end{cases}$$

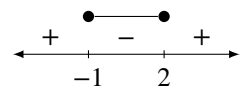
**Sol.**

$$(1) : x^2 - x \leq 2$$

$$x^2 - x - 2 \leq 0$$

$$(x - 2)(x + 1) \leq 0$$

$$-1 \leq x \leq 2$$

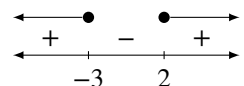


$$(2) : x^2 + x \geq 6$$

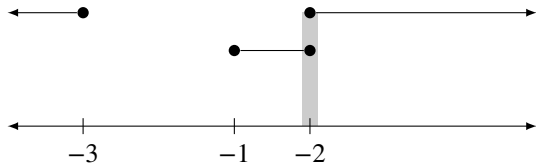
$$x^2 + x - 6 \geq 0$$

$$(x + 3)(x - 2) \geq 0$$

$$x \leq -3 \text{ or } x \geq 2$$



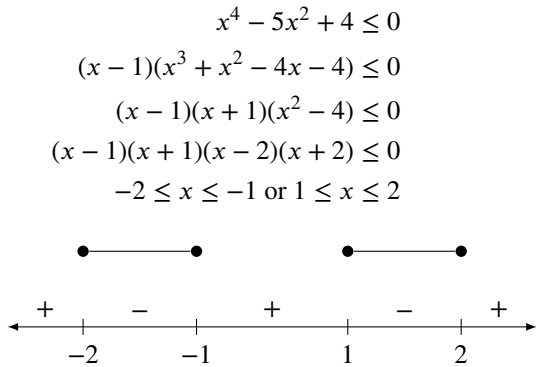
$$\therefore x = 2$$



Solve the following inequalities (Question 29 to 40):

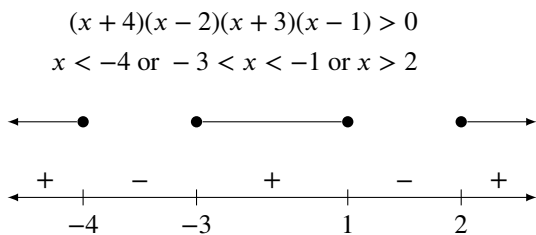
29.  $x^4 - 5x^2 + 4 \leq 0$

**Sol.**



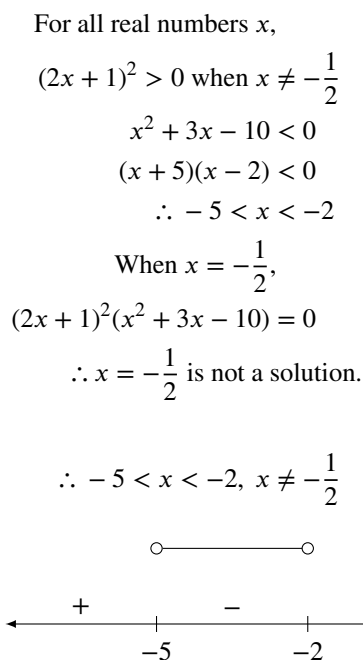
30.  $(x^2 + 2x - 8)(x^2 + 2x - 3) > 0$

**Sol.**



31.  $(2x+1)^2(x^2+3x-10) < 0$

**Sol.**



32.  $(x-1)^2(6x^2+13x+6) \leq 0$

**Sol.**

For all real numbers  $x$ ,

$$(x-1)^2 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq 1$$

$$6x^2 + 13x + 6 \leq 0$$

$$(3x+2)(2x+3) \leq 0$$

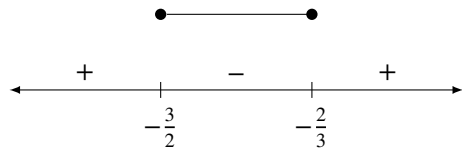
$$\therefore -\frac{3}{2} \leq x \leq -\frac{2}{3}$$

When  $x = 1$ ,

$$(x-1)^2(6x^2+13x+6) = 0$$

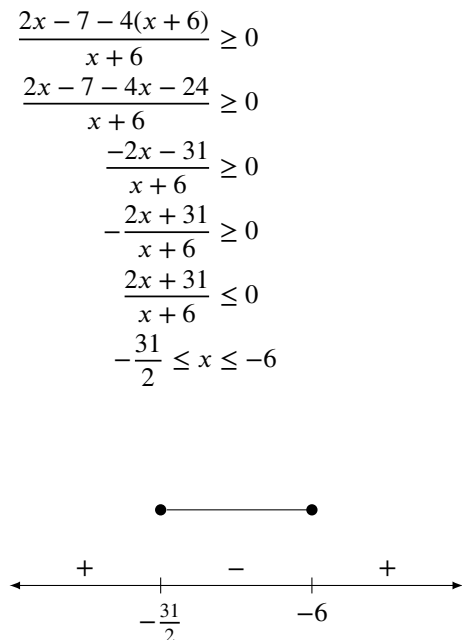
$$\therefore x = 1 \text{ is a solution.}$$

$$\therefore -\frac{3}{2} \leq x \leq -\frac{2}{3} \text{ or } x = 1$$



33.  $\frac{2x-7}{x+6} \geq 4$

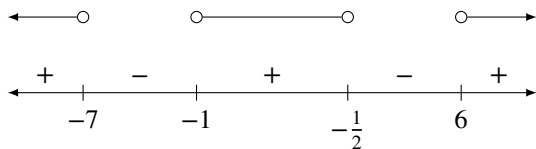
**Sol.**



34.  $\frac{x}{2x+1} > \frac{6}{x+7}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{x}{2x+1} &> \frac{6}{x+7} \\ \frac{x}{2x+1} - \frac{6}{x+7} &> 0 \\ \frac{x(x+7) - 6(2x+1)}{(2x+1)(x+7)} &> 0 \\ \frac{x^2 + 7x - 12x - 6}{(2x+1)(x+7)} &> 0 \\ \frac{x^2 - 5x - 6}{(2x+1)(x+7)} &> 0 \\ \frac{(x-6)(x+1)}{(2x+1)(x+7)} &> 0 \\ x < -7 \text{ or } -1 < x < -\frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x > 6\end{aligned}$$



35.  $\frac{(x+3)(x-2)^2}{x^2-1} \leq 0$

**Sol.**

For all real number  $x$ ,

$$(x-2)^2 > 0 \text{ when } x \neq 2$$

$$\frac{x+3}{x^2-1} \leq 0$$

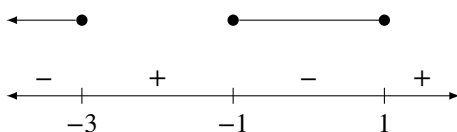
$$\frac{x+3}{(x+1)(x-1)} \leq 0$$

$$\therefore x \leq -3 \text{ or } -1 \leq x \leq 1$$

$$\text{When } x = 2, \frac{(x+3)(x-2)^2}{x^2-1} = 0$$

$\therefore x = 2$  is a solution.

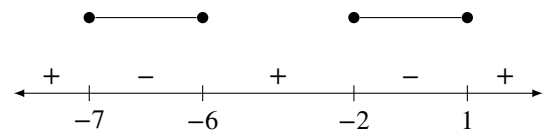
$$\therefore x \leq -3 \text{ or } -1 \leq x \leq 1 \text{ or } x = 2$$



36.  $4 + \frac{7}{x+6} \leq \frac{15}{x+2}$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}4 + \frac{7}{x+6} &\leq \frac{15}{x+2} \\ 4 + \frac{7}{x+6} - \frac{15}{x+2} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{4(x+6)(x+2) + 7(x+2) - 15(x+6)}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{4(x^2 + 8x + 12) + 7x + 14 - 15x - 90}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{4x^2 + 32x + 48 + 7x + 14 - 15x - 90}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{4x^2 + 24x - 28}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{x^2 + 6x - 7}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ \frac{(x+7)(x-1)}{(x+6)(x+2)} &\leq 0 \\ -7 \leq x \leq -6 \text{ or } -2 \leq x \leq 1 \\ \therefore x \neq -6 \text{ and } x \neq 2, \\ \therefore -7 \leq x < -6 \text{ or } -2 < x \leq 1\end{aligned}$$



37.  $|3 - 5x| \geq 7$

**Sol.**

$$|3 - 5x| \geq 7$$

$$3 - 5x \geq 7 \text{ or } 3 - 5x \leq -7$$

$$-5x \geq 4 \text{ or } -5x \leq -10$$

$$5x \leq -4 \text{ or } 5x \geq 10$$

$$x \leq -\frac{4}{5} \text{ or } x \geq 2$$

38.  $2 < |x - 5| < 9$

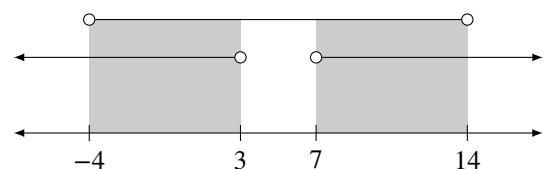
**Sol.**

$$\begin{cases} |x - 5| > 2 \\ |x - 5| < 9 \end{cases} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$(1) : x - 5 < -2 \text{ or } x - 5 > 2 \\ x < 3 \text{ or } x > 7$$

$$(2) : -9 < x - 5 < 9 \\ -4 < x < 14$$

$$\therefore -4 < x < 3 \text{ or } 7 < x < 14$$

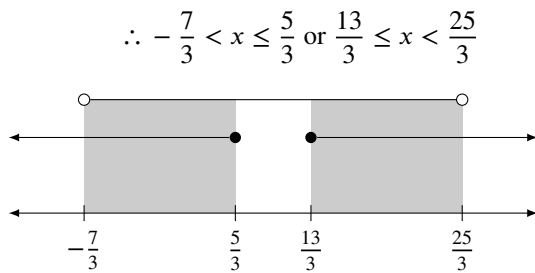


$$39. 1 \leq \left| \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 \right| < 4$$

$$\begin{cases} \left| \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 \right| \geq 1 & (1) \\ \left| \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 \right| < 4 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (1) : \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 &\leq -1 \text{ or } \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 \geq 1 \\ \frac{3x-1}{4} &\leq 1 \text{ or } \frac{3x-1}{4} \geq 3 \\ 3x-1 &\leq 4 \text{ or } 3x-1 \geq 12 \\ 3x &\leq 5 \text{ or } 3x \geq 13 \\ x &\leq \frac{5}{3} \text{ or } x \geq \frac{13}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (2) : -4 &< \frac{3x-1}{4} - 2 < 4 \\ -2 &< \frac{3x-1}{4} < 6 \\ -8 &< 3x-1 < 24 \\ -7 &< 3x < 25 \\ -\frac{7}{3} &< x < \frac{25}{3} \end{aligned}$$



$$40. \frac{4}{|x+3|} - 5 \leq 3$$

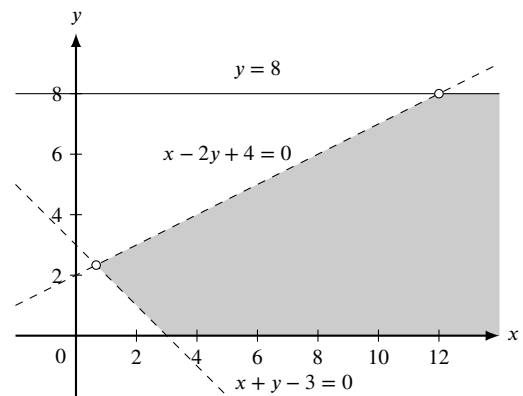
**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{4}{|x+3|} - 5 &\leq 3 \\ \frac{4}{|x+3|} &\leq 8 \\ 4 &\leq 8|x+3| \\ |x+3| &\geq \frac{1}{2} \\ x+3 &\leq -\frac{1}{2} \text{ or } x+3 \geq \frac{1}{2} \\ x &\leq -\frac{7}{2} \text{ or } x \geq -\frac{5}{2} \end{aligned}$$

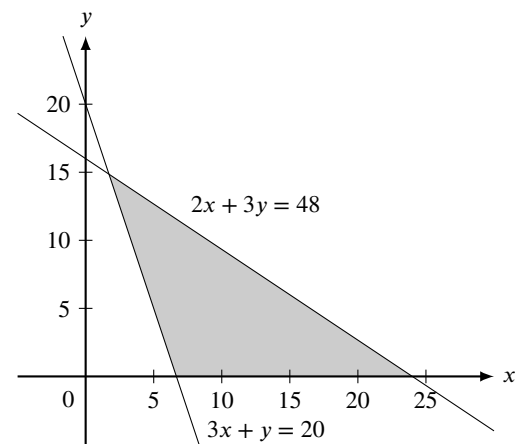
Solve the following system of inequalities with graphs (Question 41 to 42):

$$41. \begin{cases} x+y-3 > 0 \\ x-2y+4 > 0 \\ 0 \leq y \leq 8 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**



$$42. \begin{cases} 3x+y \geq 20 \\ 2x+3y \leq 48 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

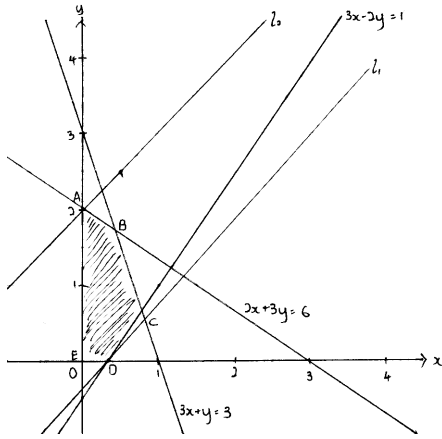


43. Find the maximum and minimum value of  $z = x - y$ , subject to the following constraints:

$$\begin{cases} 3x+y \leq 3 \\ 2x+3y \leq 6 \\ 3x-2y \leq 1 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Objective function: } z &= x - y \\ y &= x - z \end{aligned}$$



When  $y = x - z$  translates towards bottom right of the feasible region, the value of  $z$  increases. Therefore, the maximum value of the objective function is the value of  $z$  in  $l_1$ . The point of intersection  $D$  of  $l_1$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $D$  is also the point of intersection of  $3x - 2y = 1$  and  $y = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 3x - 2y = 1 \\ y = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$D = \left(\frac{1}{3}, 0\right)$$

$$z_{\max} = \frac{1}{3} - 0 = \frac{1}{3}$$

When  $y = x - z$  translates towards top left of the feasible region, the value of  $z$  decreases. Therefore, the minimum value of the objective function is the value of  $z$  in  $l_2$ . The point of intersection  $A$  of  $l_2$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum the point of intersection of  $2x + 3y = 6$  and  $x = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 2x + 3y = 6 \\ x = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$A = (0, 2)$$

$$z_{\min} = 0 - 2 = -2$$

44. A factory produces two types of products:  $A$  and  $B$ . The ingredients used in each kilogram of these two products are as follows:

Product (per kg)	Ingr. X (kg)	Ingr. Y (kg)
$A$	0.6	0.5
$B$	0.3	0.7

The profit of each kilogram of product  $A$  and  $B$  is \$3 and \$5 respectively. The factory has 24kg of ingredient  $X$  and 28kg of ingredient  $Y$ . How many kilograms of each product should be produced to maximize the profit?

**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of kilograms of product  $A$  and  $y$  be the number of kilograms of product  $B$ .

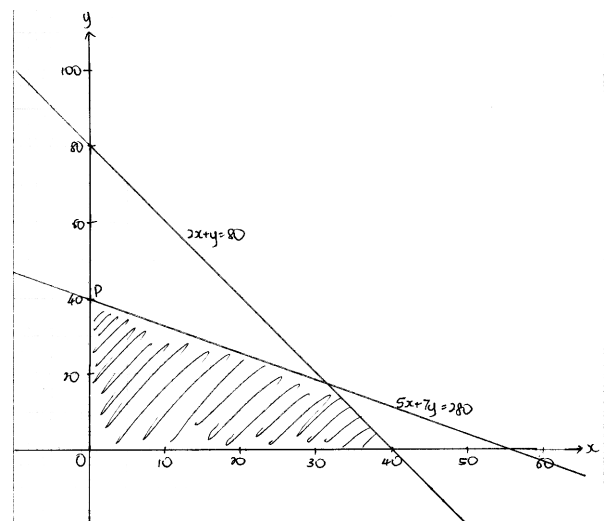
The objective function is  $z = 3x + 5y$ , which is the profit of the factory. According to the given information, we find the maximum of it.

$$\begin{cases} 0.6x + 0.3y \leq 24 \\ 0.5x + 0.7y \leq 28 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

After simplifying, we get:

$$\begin{cases} 2x + y \leq 80 \\ 5x + 7y \leq 280 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its maximum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its maximum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $5x + 7y = 280$  and  $x = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 5x + 7y = 280 \\ x = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$P = (0, 40)$$

Thus, only 40kg of product  $B$  should be produced to maximize the profit.

45. An animal must consume three different kind of nutrients:  $X$ ,  $Y$  and  $Z$  at least 11units, 13units and 15units respectively every day. There are two types of animal food:  $A$  and  $B$  that contain the following nutrients:



Food	X (unit)	Y (unit)	Z (unit)
A	1	3	2
B	2	1	2

The animal food *A* costs \$300 per kilogram and the animal food *B* costs \$400 per kilogram. How many kilograms of each food should be consumed to meet the daily nutrient requirement at the minimum cost? Find the minimum cost.

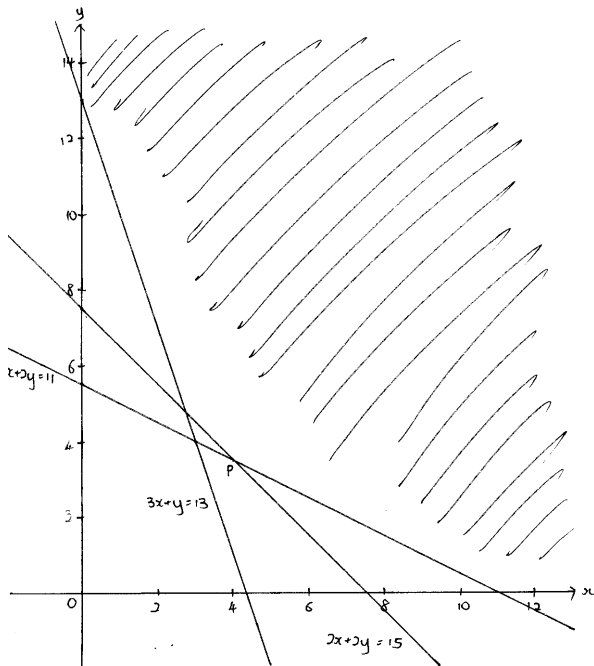
**Sol.**

Let  $x$  be the number of kilograms of food *A* and  $y$  be the number of kilograms of animal food *B*.

The objective function is  $z = 300x + 400y$ , which is the cost of the food. According to the given information, we find the minimum of it. The constraints are:

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y \geq 11 \\ 3x + y \geq 13 \\ 2x + 2y \geq 15 \\ x \geq 0 \\ y \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

The feasible region is as follows:



When the line is at  $l$ , the value of  $z$  is at its minimum. The point of intersection  $P$  of  $l$  and the feasible region makes the objective function to have its minimum value. Since  $P$  is also the point of intersection of  $x + 2y = 11$  and  $2x + 2y = 15$ ,

$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 11 & (1) \\ 2x + 2y = 15 & (2) \end{cases}$$

$$(1) : 2y = 11 - x$$

$$\text{Sub (1) into (2) : } 2x + 11 - x = 15$$

$$x = 4$$

$$y = 3.5$$

$$P = (4, 3.5)$$

$$z_{\min} = 300(4) + 400(3.5) = 2,600$$

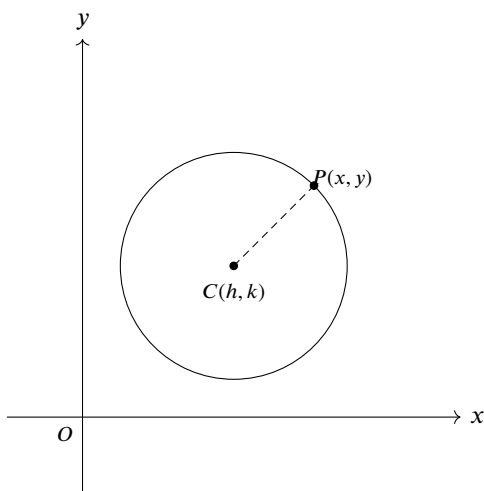
Thus, 4kg of food *A* and 3.5kg of food *B* should be consumed to meet the daily nutrient requirement at a minimum cost of \$2,600.

## Chapter 16

# Circle

### 16.1 Standard Equation of a Circle

The circle is a locus of points in a plane that are equidistant from a fixed point called the centre of the circle. The length from the centre to the points on the circle is called the radius of the circle.



The standard equation of a circle is given by

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$$

where  $(h, k)$  is the centre of the circle and  $r$  is the radius of the circle.

If the centre of the circle is at the origin, then the equation of the circle is

$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2 \quad (r > 0)$$

#### 16.1.1 Practice 1

- Find the equation of the circle with centre  $(3, -1)$  and radius 2.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Equation : } (x - 3)^2 + [y + (-1)]^2 &= 2^2 \\ (x - 3)^2 + (y + 1)^2 &= 4\end{aligned}$$

- Find the equation of the circle with centre  $(-2, 9)$  and passing through the point  $(1, 5)$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(1 - (-2))^2 + (5 - 9)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{9 + 16} \\ &= \sqrt{25} \\ &= 5\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Equation : } [x - (-2)]^2 + (y - 9)^2 &= 5^2 \\ (x + 2)^2 + (y - 9)^2 &= 25\end{aligned}$$

#### 16.1.2 Exercise 16.1

- Find the equation of the circle with centre at the origin and radius 7.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Equation : } x^2 + y^2 &= 7^2 \\ x^2 + y^2 &= 49\end{aligned}$$

- Find the equation of circle of each of the following description:

- Passing through the points  $(5, -3)$  and centre at  $(2, 1)$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(5 - 2)^2 + (-3 - 1)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{9 + 16} \\ &= \sqrt{25} \\ &= 5\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Equation : } (x - 2)^2 + (y - 1)^2 &= 5^2 \\ (x - 2)^2 + (y - 1)^2 &= 25\end{aligned}$$

- Centre at  $(3, 2)$  and radius 4.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Equation : } (x - 3)^2 + (y - 2)^2 &= 4^2 \\ (x - 3)^2 + (y - 2)^2 &= 16\end{aligned}$$

- Centre at  $(a, b)$  and radius  $a + b$ .

**Sol.**

$$\text{Equation : } (x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = (a + b)^2$$

- Given that the coordinates of two points on the end of the diameter of a circle are  $(5, -3)$  and  $(3, 1)$ , find the equation of the circle.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}C &= \left( \frac{5+3}{2}, \frac{-3+1}{2} \right) \\&= \left( \frac{8}{2}, \frac{-2}{2} \right) \\&= (4, -1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(5-4)^2 + (-3 - (-1))^2} \\&= \sqrt{1+4} \\&= \sqrt{5}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Equation : } (x-4)^2 + [y - (-1)]^2 &= (\sqrt{5})^2 \\(x-4)^2 + (y+1)^2 &= 5\end{aligned}$$

4. Find the equation of the circle with a diameter connected by the points  $(-3, 4)$  and  $(9, 2)$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}C &= \left( \frac{-3+9}{2}, \frac{4+2}{2} \right) \\&= \left( \frac{6}{2}, \frac{6}{2} \right) \\&= (3, 3)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(-3-3)^2 + (4-3)^2} \\&= \sqrt{36+1} \\&= \sqrt{37}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Equation : } (x-3)^2 + (y-3)^2 &= (\sqrt{37})^2 \\(x-3)^2 + (y-3)^2 &= 37\end{aligned}$$

5. Given two points  $P(-2, 2)$  and  $Q(4, 6)$ , find the equation of the circle with line  $PQ$  as its diameter.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}C &= \left( \frac{-2+4}{2}, \frac{2+6}{2} \right) \\&= \left( \frac{2}{2}, \frac{8}{2} \right) \\&= (1, 4)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(-2-1)^2 + (2-4)^2} \\&= \sqrt{9+4} \\&= \sqrt{13}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Equation : } (x-1)^2 + (y-4)^2 &= (\sqrt{13})^2 \\(x-1)^2 + (y-4)^2 &= 13\end{aligned}$$

6. Turn the equation  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 12y + 41 = 0$  into the standard form, and find the centre and radius of the circle.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 12y + 41 &= 0 \\x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 12y &= -41 \\(x^2 - 6x + 9) - 9 + (y^2 + 12y + 36) - 36 &= -41 \\(x-3)^2 + (y+6)^2 &= 4\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Centre :  $(3, 6)$ , Radius :  $2$

## 16.2 General Equation of a Circle

Expand the standard equation of a circle, we get

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2hx - 2ky + h^2 + k^2 - r^2 = 0$$

Let  $g = -h$ ,  $f = -k$ ,  $c = h^2 + k^2 - r^2$ , we get the general equation of a circle

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$$

From  $c = h^2 + k^2 - r^2$ , we have  $r^2 = h^2 + k^2 - c$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{h^2 + k^2 - c} \\&= \sqrt{(-g)^2 + (-f)^2 - c} \\&= \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}\end{aligned}$$

Thus,

1. When  $g^2 + f^2 - c > 0$ , the image is a real circle with centre  $(g, f)$  and radius  $\sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}$ .
2. When  $g^2 + f^2 - c = 0$ , the image is point  $(g, f)$ .
3. When  $g^2 + f^2 - c < 0$ , the image does not exist.

### 16.2.1 Practice 2

1. Find the centre and radius of the circle with equation  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 8y + 21 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 8y + 21 &= 0 \\\therefore 2g &= -6, 2f = -8, c = 21 \\g &= -3, f = -4, c = 21\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C = (3, 4)$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-4)^2 - 21} \\&= \sqrt{9 + 16 - 21} \\&= \sqrt{4} \\&= 2\end{aligned}$$

2. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the following points:

- (a)  $A(0, 0)$ ,  $B(2, 0)$ ,  $C(0, -3)$ .

**Sol.**

Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 0 + 0 + 0g + 0f + c = 0 \\ 4 + 0 + 4g + 0f + c = 0 \\ 0 + 9 + 0g - 6f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ 4 + 4g + c = 0 \\ 9 - 6f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ 4 + 4g = 0 \\ 9 - 6f = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ 4g = -4 \\ -6f = -9 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ g = -1 \\ f = \frac{3}{2} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \text{Equation : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)y + 0 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 3y = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + 1 = 0$$

- (b)  $K(0, 3)$ ,  $L(1, 2)$ ,  $M(2, -1)$ .

**Sol.**

Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 0 + 9 + 0g + 6f + c = 0 \\ 1 + 4 + 2g + 4f + c = 0 \\ 4 + 1 + 4g - 2f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 6f + c = -9 \\ 2g + 4f + c = -5 \\ 4g - 2f + c = -5 \end{cases}$$

$$g = 3, f = 1, c = -15$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq. : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(3)x + 2(1)y + (-15) = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + 6x + 2y - 15 = 0$$

3. Given that the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$  are  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(2, 5)$  and  $(-1, 2)$ , find the equation of the circumcircle of  $\triangle ABC$ .

**Sol.**

Let the equation of the circumcircle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$2fy + c = 0,$$

$$\begin{cases} 1 + 4 + 2g + 4f + c = 0 \\ 4 + 25 + 8g + 10f + c = 0 \\ 1 + 4 - 2g + 4f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 2g + 4f + c = -5 \\ 8g + 10f + c = -29 \\ -2g + 4f + c = -5 \end{cases}$$

$$g = 0, f = -4, c = 11$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq. : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(0)x + 2(-4)y + 11 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 8y + 11 = 0$$

## 16.2.2 Exercise 16.2

1. Find the centre and radius of the circle with the following equation:

(a)  $x^2 + y^2 - 64 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$x^2 + y^2 - 64 = 0$$

$$2g = 0, 2f = 0, c = -64$$

$$g = 0, f = 0, c = -64$$

$$\therefore C = (0, 0)$$

$$r = \sqrt{0^2 + 0^2 - (-64)} \\ = 8$$

(b)  $x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y = 44$

**Sol.**

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y = 44$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y - 44 = 0$$

$$2g = -4, 2f = -8, c = -44$$

$$g = -2, f = -4, c = -44$$

$$\therefore C = (2, 4)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + (-4)^2 - (-44)} \\ = \sqrt{4 + 16 + 44} \\ = \sqrt{64} \\ = 8$$

(c)  $x^2 + y^2 - 8x = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + y^2 - 8x &= 0 \\2g = -8, 2f = 0, c &= 0 \\g = -4, f = 0, c &= 0\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C = (4, 0)$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{(-4)^2 + 0^2 - 0} \\&= 4\end{aligned}$$

(d)  $9x^2 + 9y^2 + 2x - 6y - 6 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}9x^2 + 9y^2 + 2x - 6y - 6 &= 0 \\x^2 + y^2 + \frac{2}{9}x - \frac{2}{3}y - \frac{2}{3} &= 0 \\2g = \frac{2}{9}, 2f = -\frac{2}{3}, c = -\frac{2}{3} \\g = \frac{1}{9}, f = -\frac{1}{3}, c = -\frac{2}{3}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C = \left(-\frac{1}{9}, \frac{1}{3}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{9}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 - \left(-\frac{2}{3}\right)} \\&= \sqrt{\frac{64}{81}} \\&= \frac{8}{9}\end{aligned}$$

2. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the following points:

(a)  $A(1, 1), B(1, -1), C(-2, 1)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 1 + 1 + 2g + 2f + c = 0 \\ 1 + 1 + 2g - 2f + c = 0 \\ 4 + 1 - 4g + 2f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 2g + 2f + c = -2 \\ 2g - 2f + c = -2 \\ -4g + 2f + c = -5 \end{cases}$$

$$g = \frac{1}{2}, f = 0, c = -3$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)x + 2(0)y + (-3) &= 0 \\x^2 + y^2 + x - 3 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

(b)  $F(0, 0), G(3, -3), H(-1, 0)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 0 + 0 + 0g + 0f + c = 0 \\ 9 + 9 + 6g - 6f + c = 0 \\ 1 + 0 - 2g + 0f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ 6g - 6f = -18 \\ -2g = -1 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ g - f = -3 \\ g = \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ f = \frac{7}{2} \\ g = \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)x + 2\left(\frac{7}{2}\right)y + 0 &= 0 \\x^2 + y^2 + x + 7y &= 0\end{aligned}$$

(c)  $P(1, 0), Q(0, -3), R(3, 4)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 1 + 0 + 2g + 0f + c = 0 \\ 0 + 9 + 0g - 6f + c = 0 \\ 9 + 16 + 6g + 8f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 2g + c = -1 \\ -6f + c = -9 \\ 6g + 8f + c = -25 \end{cases}$$

$$g = -26, f = 10, c = 51$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-26)x + 2(10)y + 51 &= 0 \\x^2 + y^2 - 52x + 20y + 51 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

3. A circle passes through point  $A(2, 2)$  and  $B(5, 3)$  while intersecting the line  $x + y = 4$  at y-axis. Find the equation of the circle.

**Sol.**

$$x + y = 4$$

When  $x = 0, y = 4$

$\therefore$  Another point:  $C(0, 4)$

Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy +$

$$c = 0,$$

$$\begin{cases} 4 + 4 + 4g + 4f + c = 0 \\ 25 + 9 + 10g + 6f + c = 0 \\ 0 + 16 + 0g + 8f + c = 0 \\ 4g + 4f + c = -8 \\ 10g + 6f + c = -34 \\ 8f + c = -16 \end{cases}$$

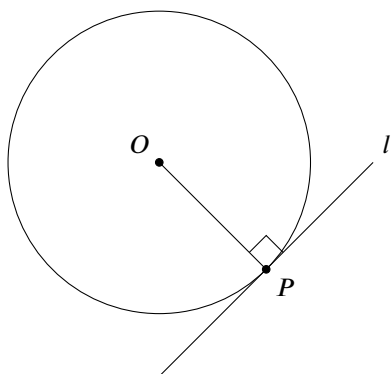
$$g = -\frac{11}{4}, f = -\frac{19}{4}, c = 22$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2\left(-\frac{11}{4}\right)x + 2\left(-\frac{19}{4}\right)y + 22 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - \frac{11}{2}x - \frac{19}{2}y + 22 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

## 16.3 Problems Related to Circles

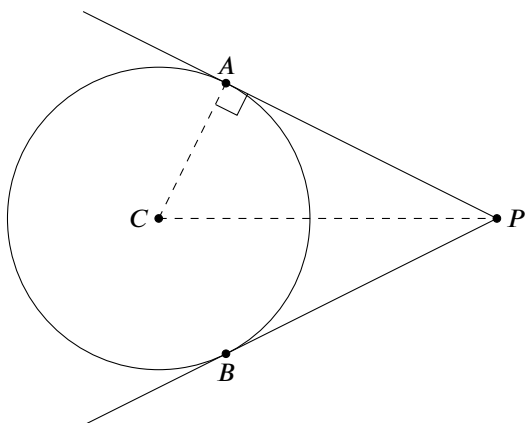
### Tangent to a Circle

When a straight line  $l$  and a circle intersect at a point  $P$ , the line  $l$  is called a tangent to the circle, and the point  $P$  is called the point of contact. The tangent line is perpendicular to the radius at the point of contact. That is to say, when the length from the point of tangency to the centre of the circle is equal to the radius of the circle, the line is a tangent to the circle.



### Length of a Tangent

According to the theorem of length of tangent, the lengths of tangents drawn from an external point to a circle are equal.



Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ , the external point  $P$  be  $(x_1, y_1)$ . Connect  $PC$  and  $CA$ ,  $\angle CPA = 90^\circ$ , the coordinate of centre of the circle  $C$  be  $(-g, -f)$ .

$$\therefore CA = \sqrt{g^2 + f^2 - c}, PC = \sqrt{(x_1 + g)^2 + (y_1 + f)^2}$$

From the Pythagorean theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} PA^2 &= PC^2 - CA^2 \\ &= (x_1 + g)^2 + (y_1 + f)^2 - (g^2 + f^2 - c) \\ &= x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the length of the tangent is given by

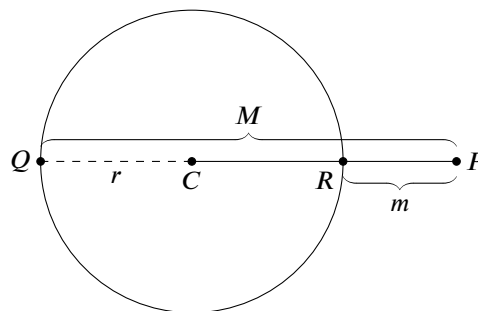
$$PA = \sqrt{x_1^2 + y_1^2 + 2gx_1 + 2fy_1 + c}$$

Note that the coefficient of  $x_1$  and  $y_1$  in the above equation must be 1.

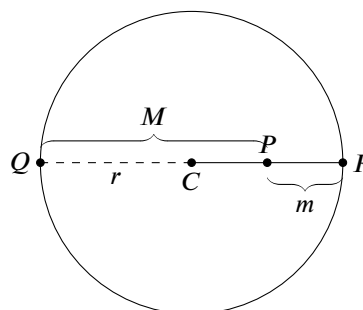
### Maximum and Minimum Distance of a Point from a Circle

Given a circle with centre  $C$  and radius  $r$  and a point  $P$  anywhere on the plane,

When  $PC > r$ , point  $P$  is said to be outside the circle, the maximum distance of  $P$  from the circle is  $M = PC + r$ , and the minimum distance of  $P$  from the circle is  $m = PC - r$ .



When  $PC < r$ , point  $P$  is said to be inside the circle, the maximum distance of  $P$  from the circle is  $M = PC + r$ , and the minimum distance of  $P$  from the circle is  $m = r - PC$ .



#### 16.3.1 Practice 3

1. Find the equation of the circle with centre  $(3, 4)$  and is tangent to the line  $x + 2y - 6 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 r &= \left| \frac{1(3) + 2(4) - 6}{\sqrt{1^2 + 2^2}} \right| \\
 &= \left| \frac{3 + 8 - 6}{\sqrt{5}} \right| \\
 &= \left| \frac{5}{\sqrt{5}} \right| \\
 &= \frac{5\sqrt{5}}{5} \\
 &= \sqrt{5}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 g &= -3, f = -4, c = (-3)^2 + (-4)^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2 \\
 &= 9 + 16 - 5 \\
 &= 20
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-3)x + 2(-4)y - 20 &= 0 \\
 x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 8y - 20 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

2. A circle passes through the points  $(2, -3)$  and  $(-2, -5)$ , and its centre is on the line  $x - 2y = 3$ . Find the equation of the circle.

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point  $(2, -3)$  be  $A$  and point  $(-2, -5)$  be  $B$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore C \text{ is on the line } x - 2y &= 3 \\
 h - 2k &= 3 \quad (1)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 CA &= CB \\
 \sqrt{(2-h)^2 + (-3-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(-2-h)^2 + (-5-k)^2} \\
 h^2 - 4h + 4 + k^2 &= h^2 + 4h + 4 + k^2 \\
 +6k + 9 &+ 10k + 25 \\
 -4h + 6k + 13 &= 4h + 10k + 29 \\
 -8h - 4k &= 16 \\
 2h + k &= -4 \quad (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Solving (1) and (2),  $h = -1, k = -2$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore C &= (-1, -2), r = \sqrt{(2 - (-1))^2 + (-3 - (-2))^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{3^2 + 1^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{10} \\
 g &= 1, f = -2, c = (-1)^2 + (-2)^2 - (\sqrt{10})^2 \\
 &= 1 + 4 - 10 \\
 &= -5
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(-2)y - 5 &= 0 \\
 x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 4y - 5 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

3. A circle with radius  $\sqrt{5}$  are tangent with the line  $x - 2y - 1 = 0$  at the point  $(3, 1)$ . Find the equation of the circle.

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point  $(3, 1)$  be  $P$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 x - 2y - 1 &= 0 \\
 2y &= x - 1 \\
 y &= \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{2} \\
 m &= \frac{1}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Let the line that passes through  $P$  and is perpendicular to  $x - 2y - 1 = 0$  be  $l$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 m_l \times m &= -1 \\
 m_l &= -2 \\
 l : y - 1 &= -2(x - 3) \\
 y - 1 &= -2x + 6 \\
 y &= -2x + 7
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore C(h, k) \text{ is on the line } l \\
 k &= -2h + 7 \quad (1)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sqrt{(3-h)^2 + (1-k)^2} &= \sqrt{5} \\
 h^2 - 6h + 9 + k^2 - 2k + 1 &= 5 \quad (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Sub (1) in (2),

$$\begin{aligned}
 h^2 - 6h + 9 + (-2h + 7)^2 - 2(-2h + 7) + 1 &= 5 \\
 h^2 - 6h + 9 + 4h^2 - 28h + 49 + 4h - 14 + 1 &= 5 \\
 5h^2 - 30h + 40 &= 0 \\
 h^2 - 6h + 8 &= 0 \\
 (h - 4)(h - 2) &= 0 \\
 h &= 4 \text{ or } h = 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Sub } h = 4 \text{ in (1), } k = -2(4) + 7 = -1$$

$$\text{Sub } h = 2 \text{ in (1), } k = -2(2) + 7 = 3$$

$$\therefore C = (4, -1) \text{ or } C = (2, 3)$$

When  $C = (4, -1)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 g &= -4, f = 1, c = 4^2 + (-1)^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2 \\
 &= 16 + 1 - 5 \\
 &= 12
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-4)x + 2(1)y + 12 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 2y + 12 = 0$$

When  $C = (2, 3)$ ,

$$g = -2, f = -3, c = 2^2 + 3^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2$$

$$= 4 + 9 - 5$$

$$= 8$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-2)x + 2(-3)y + 8 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 8 = 0$$

4. Prove the following lines are tangent to the following circles:

(a)  $3x - y - 5 = 0, x^2 + y^2 - 16x + 2y + 25 = 0$

**Proof.**

$$C = (8, -1)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-8)^2 + 1^2 - 25} = 2\sqrt{10}$$

$$d = \left| \frac{3(8) - 1(-1) - 5}{\sqrt{3^2 + (-1)^2}} \right|$$

$$= \left| \frac{20}{\sqrt{10}} \right|$$

$$= \frac{20\sqrt{10}}{10}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{10}$$

$$\therefore d = r$$

$\therefore$  The line  $3x - y - 5 = 0$  is tangent to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 16x + 2y + 25 = 0$

(b)  $2x - y - 1 = 0, x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y = 0$

**Proof.**

$$C = (-1, 2)$$

$$r = \sqrt{1^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{5}$$

$$d = \left| \frac{2(-1) - 1(2) - 1}{\sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2}} \right|$$

$$= \left| \frac{-5}{\sqrt{5}} \right|$$

$$= \frac{5\sqrt{5}}{5}$$

$$= \sqrt{5}$$

$$\therefore d = r$$

$\therefore$  The line  $2x - y - 1 = 0$  is tangent to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y = 0$

5. Find the length of the tangent from the point  $P(8, 3)$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 8 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$d = \sqrt{8^2 + 3^2 + 2(0)(8) + 2(0)(3) - 8} = \sqrt{65}$$

### 16.3.2 Exercise 16.3

1. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $(1, 4)$  and  $(0, -3)$ , and its centre is on the line  $x - 2y = 4$ .

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point  $(1, 4)$  be  $A$  and point  $(0, -3)$  be  $B$ .

$$\therefore C \text{ is on the line } x - 2y = 4$$

$$h - 2k = 4 \quad (1)$$

$$CA = CB$$

$$\sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (4-k)^2} = \sqrt{(0-h)^2 + (-3-k)^2}$$

$$h^2 - 2h + 1 + k^2 - 8k + 16 = h^2 + k^2 + 6k + 9$$

$$-2h + 1 + k^2 - 8k + 16 = h^2 + k^2 + 6k + 9$$

$$-2h + 14k = -8$$

$$h + 7k = 4 \quad (2)$$

Solving (1) and (2),  $h = 4, k = 0$

$$\therefore C = (4, 0), r = \sqrt{(1-4)^2 + (4-0)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(-3)^2 + 4^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}$$

$$= 5$$

$$g = -4, f = 0, c = (-4)^2 + 0^2 - 5^2$$

$$= 16 - 25$$

$$= -9$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-4)x + 2(0)y - 9 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 8x - 9 = 0$$

2. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $(3, 2)$  and  $(-4, -5)$ , and its centre is on the line  $3x + y + 6 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point  $(3, 2)$  be  $A$  and point  $(-4, -5)$  be  $B$ .

$$\therefore C \text{ is on the line } 3x + y + 6 = 0$$

$$3h + k + 6 = 0 \quad (1)$$



$$CA = CB$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{(3-h)^2 + (2-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(-4-h)^2 + (-5-k)^2} \\ h^2 - 6h + 9 + k^2 &= h^2 + 8h + 16 + k^2 \\ -4k + 4 &+ 10k + 25 \\ -14h - 14k &= 28 \\ h + k &= -2 \quad (2)\end{aligned}$$

Solving (1) and (2),  $h = -2$ ,  $k = 0$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore C &= (-2, 0), r = \sqrt{[3 - (-2)]^2 + (2 - 0)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{5^2 + 2^2} \\ &= \sqrt{29} \\ g = 2, f = 0, c &= (-2)^2 + 0^2 - \sqrt{29}^2 \\ &= 4 - 29 \\ &= -25\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(2)x + 2(0)y - 25 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 25 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

3. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $A(5, 2)$  and  $B(-3, 0)$ , and its centre is on the y-axis.

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(0, k)$ , point  $(5, 2)$  be  $A$  and point  $(-3, 0)$  be  $B$ .

$$\begin{aligned}CA &= CB \\ \sqrt{(5-0)^2 + (2-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(-3-0)^2 + (0-k)^2} \\ 25 + k^2 - 4k + 4 &= 9 + k^2 \\ -4k &= -20 \\ k &= 5\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore C &= (0, 5), r = \sqrt{(5-0)^2 + (2-5)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{36} \\ &= 6 \\ g = 0, f = -5, c &= 0^2 + (-5)^2 - 6^2 \\ &= 25 - 36 \\ &= -9\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(0)x + 2(-5)y - 9 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 10y - 9 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

4. Find the equation of the circle with centre at the origin and is tangent to the line  $3x - 4y + 20 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \left| \frac{3(-0) - 4(-0) + 20}{\sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2}} \right| \\ &= \frac{20}{5} \\ &= 4\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}g = 0, f = 0, c &= 0^2 + 0^2 - 4^2 \\ &= -16\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(0)x + 2(0)y - 16 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 16 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

5. Find the equation of the circle with centre  $A(-5, 4)$ , and is tangent to the x-axis.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \left| \frac{0(-5) + 1(4) + 0}{\sqrt{0^2 + 1^2}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{4}{1} \right| \\ &= 4\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}g = 5, f = -4, c &= 5^2 + (-4)^2 - 4^2 \\ &= 25\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(5)x + 2(-4)y + 25 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 + 10x - 8y + 25 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

6. Find the equation of the circle with centre  $(-4, 2)$ , and is tangent to the line  $3x + 2y = 5$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}r &= \left| \frac{3(-4) + 2(2) - 5}{\sqrt{3^2 + 2^2}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{-13}{\sqrt{13}} \right| \\ &= \frac{13\sqrt{13}}{13} \\ &= \sqrt{13}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}g = 4, f = -2, c &= 4^2 + (-2)^2 - \sqrt{13}^2 \\ &= 16 + 4 - 13 \\ &= 7\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(4)x + 2(-2)y + 7 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 + 8x - 4y + 7 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

7. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the

point (3, 0), and is tangent to the line  $2x - 3y - 24 = 0$  at point (3, -6).

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point (3, -6) be  $P$ .

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 3y - 24 &= 0 \\ 3y &= 2x - 24 \\ y &= \frac{2}{3}x - 8 \\ m &= \frac{2}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Let the line that passes through  $P$  and is perpendicular to  $2x - 3y - 24 = 0$  be  $l$ .

$$\begin{aligned} m_l \times m &= -1 \\ m_l &= -\frac{3}{2} \\ l : y + 6 &= -\frac{3}{2}(x - 3) \\ 2y + 12 &= -3x + 9 \\ 3x + 2y &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \because C(h, k) \text{ is on the line } l \\ 3h + 2k &= -3 \quad (1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{(3-h)^2 + (0-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(3-h)^2 + (-6-k)^2} \\ h^2 - 6h + 9 + k^2 &= h^2 - 6h + 9 + k^2 + 12k + 36 \\ 12k + 36 &= 0 \\ k &= -3 \\ \text{Sub } k = -3 \text{ into (1),} \\ 3h = 3 \text{ into (1),} \\ h &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore C &= (1, -3), r = \sqrt{(3-1)^2 + [0-(-3)]^2} \\ &= \sqrt{2^2 + 3^2} \\ &= \sqrt{13} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} g &= -1, f = 3, c = (-1)^2 + 3^2 - \sqrt{13}^2 \\ &= 1 + 9 - 13 \\ &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(3)y - 3 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 6y - 3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

8. Given a circle  $C_1$  and another circle  $C_2 : x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 8 = 0$  shares the same centre, and  $C_1$  is tangent to the line  $3x + 4y - 13 = 0$ . Find the equation of the circle  $C_1$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} C_{C1} &= C_{C2} = (2, 3) \\ r_{C1} &= \left| \frac{3(2) + 4(3) - 13}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{5}{\sqrt{25}} \right| \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} g &= -2, f = -3, c = (-2)^2 + (-3)^2 - 1^2 \\ &= 4 + 9 - 1 \\ &= 12 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-2)x + 2(-3)y + 12 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y + 12 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

9. Prove the following lines are tangent to the following circles:

(a)  $6x + 5y - 31 = 0, x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 5y - 5 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} C &= \left(-2, \frac{5}{2}\right) \\ r &= \sqrt{2^2 + \left(-\frac{5}{2}\right)^2 + 5} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{61}}{2} \\ d &= \left| \frac{6(-2) + 5\left(\frac{5}{2}\right) - 31}{\sqrt{6^2 + 5^2}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{-12 + \frac{25}{2} - 31}{\sqrt{61}} \right| \\ &= \frac{61}{2\sqrt{61}} \\ &= \frac{61\sqrt{61}}{2 \times 61} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{61}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore d = r$$

$\therefore$  The line  $6x + 5y - 31 = 0$  is tangent to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 5y - 5 = 0$

(b)  $3x + 1 = 0, 9x^2 + 9y^2 + 3x + 6y + 1 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} 9x^2 + 9y^2 + 3x + 6y + 1 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 + \frac{1}{3}x + \frac{2}{3}y + \frac{1}{9} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &= \left(-\frac{1}{6}, -\frac{1}{3}\right) \\
 r &= \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2} - \frac{1}{9} \\
 &= \frac{1}{6} \\
 d &= \left| \frac{3\left(-\frac{1}{6}\right) + 0\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right) + 1}{\sqrt{3^2 + 0^2}} \right| \\
 &= \left| \frac{-\frac{1}{2} + 1}{3} \right| \\
 &= \frac{1}{6}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore d = r$$

$\therefore$  The line  $3x + 1 = 0$  is tangent to

$$\text{the circle } x^2 + y^2 + \frac{1}{3}x + \frac{2}{3}y + \frac{1}{9} = 0$$

10. Find the length of the tangent from the following circles to the following circles:

(a)  $(-2, 3)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 2y = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 d &= \sqrt{(-2)^2 + (3)^2 + 2(-3)(-2) + 2(-1)(3) + 0} \\
 &= \sqrt{4 + 9 + 12 - 6} \\
 &= \sqrt{19}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $(-6, 0)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 2y + 8 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 d &= \sqrt{(-6)^2 + (0)^2 + 2(-6)(-3) + 2(0)(1) + 8} \\
 &= \sqrt{36 + 0 + 36 + 0 + 8} \\
 &= \sqrt{80} \\
 &= 4\sqrt{5}
 \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $(2, 2)$ ,  $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2x + 4y - 3 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 2x + 4y - 3 &= 0 \\
 x^2 + y^2 + x + 2y - \frac{3}{2} &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 d &= \sqrt{(2)^2 + (2)^2 + 2(2)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + 2(2)(1) - \frac{3}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{4 + 4 + 2 + 4 - \frac{3}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{\frac{25}{2}} \\
 &= \frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

11. If the following lines and circles are tangent to each other, find the value of  $k$ :

(a)  $4x + 3y - k = 0$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 4y - 12 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &= (3, -2) \\
 r &= \sqrt{(-3)^2 + 2^2 - (-12)} \\
 &= \sqrt{9 + 4 + 12} \\
 &= \sqrt{25} \\
 &= 5
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left| \frac{4(3) + 3(-2) - k}{\sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}} \right| &= 5 \\
 \frac{6 - k}{5} &= \pm 5 \\
 6 - k &= \pm 25 \\
 k &= 6 \pm 25 = \pm 19 \\
 k &= 6 + 25 \text{ or } k = 6 - 25 \\
 k &= 31 \text{ or } k = -19
 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $x + 3y + k = 0$ ,  $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 12y + 13 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 2x^2 + 2y^2 + 12y + 13 &= 0 \\
 x^2 + y^2 + 6y + \frac{13}{2} &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 C &= (0, -3) \\
 r &= \sqrt{0^2 + 3^2 - \frac{13}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{9 - \frac{13}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{\frac{5}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\left| \frac{1(0) + 3(-3) + k}{\sqrt{1^2 + 3^2}} \right| = \sqrt{\frac{5}{2}}$$

$$\frac{k-9}{\sqrt{10}} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{5}{2}}$$

$$\frac{(k-9)^2}{10} = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$(k-9)^2 = 25$$

$$k-9 = \pm 5$$

$$k = 9 \pm 5$$

$$k = 9 + 5 \text{ or } k = 9 - 5$$

$$k = 14 \text{ or } k = 4$$

12. Find the maximum and minimum distance of the point  $P(-2, 5)$  from the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 2y + 1 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$C = (1, 1)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-1)^2 + (-1)^2 - 1}$$

$$= 1$$

$$PC = \sqrt{(-2-1)^2 + (5-1)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{9+16}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}$$

$$= 5$$

$$\therefore PC > r$$

$\therefore P$  is outside the circle

$$d_{\max} = PC + r = 5 + 1 = 6$$

$$d_{\min} = PC - r = 5 - 1 = 4$$

13. Find the maximum and minimum distance of the point  $Q(0, 1)$  from the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 10y - 2 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$C = (3, 5)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-5)^2 - (-2)}$$

$$= \sqrt{9+25+2}$$

$$= \sqrt{36}$$

$$= 6$$

$$QC = \sqrt{(0-3)^2 + (1-5)^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{9+16}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}$$

$$= 5$$

$$\therefore PC < r$$

$\therefore P$  is inside the circle

$$d_{\max} = QC + r = 5 + 6 = 11$$

$$d_{\min} = r - QC = 6 - 5 = 1$$

14. Assume that the maximum and minimum distance of the point  $R(5, 2)$  from the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 4y - 1 = 0$  are  $M$  and  $N$  respectively, find the product of  $M$  and  $N$ .

**Sol.**

$$C = (2, -2)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-2)^2 + 2^2 - (-1)}$$

$$= \sqrt{4+4+1}$$

$$= \sqrt{9}$$

$$= 3$$

$$RC = \sqrt{(5-2)^2 + [2-(-2)]^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{9+16}$$

$$= \sqrt{25}$$

$$= 5$$

$$\therefore RC > r$$

$\therefore R$  is outside the circle

$$d_{\max} = RC + r = 5 + 3 = 8$$

$$d_{\min} = RC - r = 5 - 3 = 2$$

$$\therefore MN = 8 \times 2 = 16$$

## 16.4 Revision Exercise 16

1. Find the equation of the following circles:

- (a) A circle with centre  $(1, -1)$  and radius 3.

**Sol.**

$$g = -1, f = 1, c = 1^2 + (-1)^2 - 3^2 = -7$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(-1)y - 7 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 2y - 7 = 0$$

- (b) A circle with centre  $(2, -3)$  and radius 7.

**Sol.**

$$g = -2, f = 3, c = (-2)^2 + 3^2 - 7^2 = -36$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-2)x + 2(3)y - 36 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 6y - 36 = 0$$

2. Find the equation of the circle with centre at the origin and passes through the point  $(2, -1)$ .

**Sol.**

$$r = \sqrt{(2-0)^2 + (-1-0)^2} = \sqrt{5}$$
$$g = 0, f = 0, c = 0^2 + 0^2 - (\sqrt{5})^2 = -5$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(0)x + 2(0)y - 5 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 5 = 0$$

3. Find the equation of the circle with centre at  $(2, 3)$  and passes through the point  $(-5, 6)$ .

**Sol.**

$$r = \sqrt{(2-(-5))^2 + (3-6)^2} = \sqrt{58}$$
$$g = -2, f = -3, c = (-2)^2 + (-3)^2 - (\sqrt{58})^2 = -45$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-2)x + 2(-3)y - 45 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6y - 45 = 0$$

4. Find the equation of the circle with diameter connecting the points  $(2, -5)$  and  $(8, -1)$ .

**Sol.**

$$M = \left( \frac{2+8}{2}, \frac{-5-1}{2} \right)$$
$$= (5, -3)$$
$$r = \sqrt{(5-2)^2 + (-3-(-5))^2} = \sqrt{13}$$

$$g = -5, f = 3, c = (-5)^2 + 3^2 - (\sqrt{13})^2 = 21$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-5)x + 2(3)y + 21 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 10x + 6y + 21 = 0$$

5. Find the centre and radius of the following circle:

(a)  $x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 14y + 50 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$2g = -6, 2f = 14, c = 50$$
$$g = -3, f = 7, c = 50$$

$$C = (3, -7)$$
$$r = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + 7^2 - 50}$$
$$= \sqrt{8}$$
$$= 2\sqrt{2}$$

(b)  $x^2 + y^2 + 5x - 2y + 1 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$2g = 5, 2f = -2, c = 1$$
$$g = \frac{5}{2}, f = -1, c = 1$$

$$C = \left( -\frac{5}{2}, 1 \right)$$
$$r = \sqrt{\left( \frac{5}{2} \right)^2 + (-1)^2 - 1}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{25}}{2}$$

(c)  $3x^2 + 3y^2 + 6x - 12y + 1 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 + 6x - 12y + 1 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y + \frac{1}{3} = 0$$

$$2g = 2, 2f = -4, c = \frac{1}{3}$$
$$g = 1, f = -2, c = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$C = (-1, 2)$$
$$r = \sqrt{1^2 + (-2)^2 - \frac{1}{3}}$$
$$= \sqrt{\frac{14}{3}}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{14}\sqrt{3}}{3}$$
$$= \frac{\sqrt{42}}{3}$$

(d)  $4x^2 + 4y^2 - 12x + 16y - 7 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$4x^2 + 4y^2 - 12x + 16y - 7 = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 4y - \frac{7}{4} = 0$$

$$2g = -3, 2f = 4, c = -\frac{7}{4}$$

$$g = -\frac{3}{2}, f = 2, c = -\frac{7}{4}$$

$$C = \left(\frac{3}{2}, -2\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \sqrt{\left(-\frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + 2^2 - \left(-\frac{7}{4}\right)} \\ &= \sqrt{8} \\ &= 2\sqrt{2} \end{aligned}$$

6. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the following three points:

(a)  $(-1, -1), (-3, 5), (1, 3)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 1 + 1 - 2g - 2f + c = 0 \\ 9 + 25 - 6g + 10f + c = 0 \\ 1 + 9 + 2g + 6f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 2g + 2f - c = 2 \\ 6g - 10f - c = 34 \\ 2g + 6f + c = -10 \end{cases}$$

$$g = 2, f = -2, c = -2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(2)x + 2(-2)y - 2 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 4y - 2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $(2, 1), (2, -4), (3, -5)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 + 2gx + 2fy + c = 0$ ,

$$\begin{cases} 4 + 1 + 4g + 2f + c = 0 \\ 4 + 16 + 4g - 8f + c = 0 \\ 9 + 25 + 6g - 10f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} 4g + 2f + c = -5 \\ 4g - 8f + c = -20 \\ 6g - 10f + c = -34 \end{cases}$$

$$g = -\frac{11}{2}, f = \frac{3}{2}, c = 14$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 - 11x + 3y + 14 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 11x + 3y + 14 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $(0, 0), (0, a), (b, 0)$

**Sol.** Let the equation of the circle be  $x^2 + y^2 +$

$$2gx + 2fy + c = 0,$$

$$\begin{cases} 0 + 0 + 0g + 0f + c = 0 \\ 0 + a^2 + 0g + 2af + c = 0 \\ b^2 + 0 + 2bg + 0f + c = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ 2af = -a^2 \\ 2bg = -b^2 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} c = 0 \\ f = -\frac{a}{2} \\ g = -\frac{b}{2} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 - 2\left(\frac{b}{2}\right)x - 2\left(\frac{a}{2}\right)y + 0 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - bx - ay &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

7. Given the radius of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 10y + c$  is 9, find the value of  $c$ .

**Sol.**

$$g = -4, f = 5, c = (-4)^2 + 5^2 - 9^2 = -40$$

8. Given two circles  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 4y - 95 = 0$  and  $x^2 + y^2 - 8x - 12y + 48 = 0$ , find the distance between their centres.

**Sol.**

$$C_1 = (1, 2)$$

$$C_2 = (4, 6)$$

$$\begin{aligned} d &= \sqrt{(4-1)^2 + (6-2)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{25} \\ &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

9. Find the equation of the circle with centre at  $(1, -1)$  and is tangent to the line  $5x - 12y + 9 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \left| \frac{5(1) - 12(-1) + 9}{\sqrt{5^2 + 12^2}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{5 + 12 + 9}{\sqrt{169}} \right| \\ &= \left| \frac{26}{13} \right| \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$g = -1, f = 1, c = (-1)^2 + 1^2 - 2^2 = -2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(1)y - 2 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 2y - 2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

10. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $(1, -1)$  and  $(1, 1)$ , and is tangent to the line  $x - 2 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (-1-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (1-k)^2} \\ h^2 - 2h + 1 + k^2 &= h^2 - 2h + 1 + k^2 \\ +2k + 1 &= -2k + 1 \\ k &= 0 \\ \left| \frac{1(h) + 0(0) - 2}{\sqrt{1^2 + 0^2}} \right| &= \sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (1-k)^2} \\ (h-2)^2 &= h^2 - 2h + 1 + k^2 - 2k + 1 \\ h^2 - 4h + 4 &= h^2 - 2h + 2 \\ -2h &= -2 \\ h &= 1\end{aligned}$$

$$C = (1, 0)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(1-1)^2 + (1-0)^2} = 1$$

$$g = -1, f = 0, c = (-1)^2 + 0^2 - 1^2 = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(0)y + 0 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 0 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

11. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $(6, -4)$  and  $(1, 7)$ , and its centre is on the line  $2x - 3y = 6$ .

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ , point  $(6, -4)$  be  $A$  and point  $(1, 7)$  be  $B$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore C \text{ is on the line } 2x - 3y &= 6 \\ 2h - 3k &= 6 \quad (1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{(6-h)^2 + (-4-k)^2} &= \sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (7-k)^2} \\ h^2 - 12h + 36 + k^2 &= h^2 - 2h + 1 + k^2 \\ +8k + 16 &= -14k + 49 \\ 8k - 12h + 52 &= -2h - 14k + 50 \\ -10h + 22k &= -2 \\ 5h - 11k &= 1 \quad (2)\end{aligned}$$

Solving (1) and (2),  $h = 9, k = 4$

$$C = (9, 4)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(6-9)^2 + (-4-4)^2} = \sqrt{73}$$

$$g = -9, f = -4, c = (-9)^2 + (-4)^2 - (\sqrt{73})^2 = 24$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-9)x + 2(-4)y + 24 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 18x - 8y + 24 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

12. Find the equation of the circle that passes through the points  $(-1, 1)$  and  $(1, 3)$ , and its centre is on x-axis.

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, 0)$ , point  $(-1, 1)$  be  $A$  and point  $(1, 3)$  be  $B$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{(-1-h)^2 + (1-0)^2} &= \sqrt{(1-h)^2 + (3-0)^2} \\ h^2 + 2h + 1 + 1 &= h^2 - 2h + 1 + 9 \\ 4h &= 8 \\ h &= 2\end{aligned}$$

$$C = (2, 0)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-1-2)^2 + (1-0)^2} = \sqrt{10}$$

$$g = -2, f = 0, c = (-2)^2 + 0^2 - (\sqrt{10})^2 = -6$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-2)x + 2(0)y - 6 &= 0 \\ x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 6 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

13. Find the equation of the circle that is tangent to the line  $3x + 4y + 18 = 0$  at point  $(-2, -3)$ , and its centre is on the line  $x - y = 0$ .

**Sol.**

Let the centre of the circle be  $C(h, k)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore C \text{ is on the line } x - y &= 0 \\ h - k &= 0 \\ h &= k \quad (1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\left| \frac{3h + 4k + 18}{\sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}} \right| = \sqrt{(-2-h)^2 + (-3-k)^2}$$

Sub (1),

$$\left| \frac{3h + 4h + 18}{5} \right| = \sqrt{(-2-h)^2 + (-3-h)^2}$$

$$(7h + 18)^2 = 25(h^2 + 4h + 4 + h^2 + 6h + 9)$$

$$49h^2 + 252h + 324 = 25(2h^2 + 10h + 13)$$

$$49h^2 + 252h + 324 = 50h^2 + 250h + 325$$

$$h^2 - 2h + 1 = 0$$

$$(h-1)^2 = 0$$

$$h = 1$$

$$k = h = 1$$

$$C = (1, 1)$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-2-1)^2 + (-3-1)^2} = 5$$

$$g = -1, f = -1, c = (-1)^2 + (-1)^2 - 5^2 = -23$$

$$\therefore \text{Eq : } x^2 + y^2 + 2(-1)x + 2(-1)y - 23 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2x - 2y - 23 = 0$$

14. If the following lines and circles are tangent to each other, find the value of  $k$ :

(a)  $2x - y + k = 0$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 1 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$C = (0, 0)$$

$$r = 1$$

$$\left| \frac{2(0) - 1(0) + k}{\sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2}} \right| = 1$$

$$\frac{k^2}{5} = 1$$

$$k = \pm\sqrt{5}$$

(b)  $2x + 3y + 3\sqrt{13} = 0$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 = k$

**Sol.**

$$C = (0, 0)$$

$$r = \sqrt{k}$$

$$\frac{2(0) + 3(0) + 3\sqrt{13}}{\sqrt{2^2 + 3^2}} = \sqrt{k}$$

$$\frac{117}{13} = k$$

$$k = 9$$

(c)  $y = x + k$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 = 9$

**Sol.**

$$C = (0, 0)$$

$$r = 3$$

$$\frac{1(0) - 1(0) + k}{\sqrt{1^2 + (-1)^2}} = 3$$

$$\frac{k^2}{2} = 9$$

$$k^2 = 18$$

$$k = \pm 3\sqrt{2}$$

15. If the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 6y - 4y + k = 0$  is tangent to the x-axis, find the value of  $k$  and the coordinates of the point of tangency.

**Sol.**

Let the point of tangency be  $P(h, 0)$ ,

$$C = (3, 2)$$

$$\left| \frac{0(3) + 1(2) + 0}{\sqrt{0^2 + 1^2}} \right| = \sqrt{13 - k}$$

$$4 = 13 - k$$

$$k = 9$$

$$r = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-2)^2 - k}$$

$$= \sqrt{13 - 9}$$

$$= 2$$

$$\sqrt{(3 - h)^2 + (2 - 0)^2} = 2$$

$$h^2 - 6h + 9 + 4 = 4$$

$$(h - 3)^2 = 0$$

$$h = 3$$

$$\therefore P = (3, 0)$$

16. Given the coordinates and equations of the following points and circles respectively, find the length of the tangent from the point to the circle:

(a)  $(1, 6)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 19 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$d = \sqrt{1^2 + 6^2 + 2(1)(1) + 2(0)(6) + (-19)}$$

$$= \sqrt{1 + 36 + 2 + 0 - 19}$$

$$= \sqrt{20}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{5}$$

(b)  $(2, 4)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 2x + 6y + 9 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$d = \sqrt{2^2 + 4^2 + 2(-1)(2) + 2(3)(4) + 9}$$

$$= \sqrt{4 + 16 - 4 + 24 + 9}$$

$$= \sqrt{49}$$

$$= 7$$

(c)  $(3, 2)$ ,  $2x^2 + 2y^2 + 10x + 11y - 52 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$2x^2 + 2y^2 + 10x + 11y - 52 = 0$$

$$x^2 + y^2 + 5x + \frac{11}{2}y - 26 = 0$$



$$\begin{aligned}
 d &= \sqrt{3^2 + 2^2 + 2\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)(3) + 2\left(\frac{11}{4}\right)(2) - 26} \\
 &= \sqrt{9 + 4 + 15 + 11 - 26} \\
 &= \sqrt{13}
 \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $(0, 0)$ ,  $x^2 + y^2 - 2ax + 4ay + 4a^2 = 0$

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 d &= \sqrt{0^2 + 0^2 + 2(-a)(0) + 2(2a)(0) + 4a^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{4a^2} \\
 &= 2|a| \text{ since } a \text{ must } \geq 0
 \end{aligned}$$

17. Prove that the distance of the tangent from the point  $A(3, -4)$  to the circle  $C_1 : x^2 + y^2 - 10x - 7y + 13 = 0$  is equal to the distance of the tangent to the circle  $C_2 : 2x^2 + 2y^2 - 3x - 12y - 17 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 d_1 &= \sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2 + 2(-5)(3) + 2\left(-\frac{7}{2}\right)(-4) + 13} \\
 &= \sqrt{9 + 16 - 30 + 28 + 13} \\
 &= \sqrt{36} \\
 &= 6
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_2 : 2x^2 + 2y^2 - 3x - 12y - 17 &= 0 \\
 x^2 + y^2 - \frac{3}{2}x - 6y - \frac{17}{2} &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 d_2 &= \sqrt{3^2 + (-4)^2 + 2\left(-\frac{3}{4}\right)(3) + 2(-3)(-4) - \frac{17}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{9 + 16 - \frac{9}{2} + 24 - \frac{17}{2}} \\
 &= \sqrt{36} \\
 &= 6
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore d_1 = d_2$$

18. Prove that line  $Y = 2x$  is tangent to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 16x + 12y + 80 = 0$ , and find the coordinate of its point of tangency.

19. Find the longest and the shortest distance of the point  $P(-5, -12)$  to the circle  $x^2 + y^2 - 25 = 0$ .

**Sol.**

$$C = (0, 0)$$

$$r = 5$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 PC &= \sqrt{(-5 - 0)^2 + (-12 - 0)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{169} \\
 &= 13
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore PC > r$$

$\therefore P$  is outside the circle

$$d_{\max} = PC + r = 13 + 5 = 18$$

$$d_{\min} = PC - r = 13 - 5 = 8$$

20. Given the equation of circle  $x^2 + y^2 + 8y - 6y = 0$ .

- (a) Find the centre and radius of the circle.

**Sol.**

$$2g = 8, 2f = -6, c = 0$$

$$g = 4, f = -3, c = 0$$

$$\therefore C = (-4, 3)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 r &= \sqrt{4^2 + (-3)^2 - 0} \\
 &= 5
 \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Prove that  $P(-2, 7)$  is inside the circle.

**Sol.**

$$\begin{aligned}
 PC &= \sqrt{(-2 - (-4))^2 + (7 - 3)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{4 + 16} \\
 &= \sqrt{20} \\
 &= 2\sqrt{5}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore PC < r$$

$\therefore P$  is inside the circle

- (c) Find the equation of chord of the circle that is split into two equal parts by the point  $P(-2, 7)$ .

**Sol.**

Let the equation of the chord be  $l$ .

$\therefore l$  is split into two equal parts by  $P$

$\therefore l$  is perpendicular to  $PC$

$$\begin{aligned}
 m_{PC} &= \frac{7 - 3}{-2 - (-4)} \\
 &= 2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$M_l M_{PC} = -1$$

$$M_l = -\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore l : y - 7 = -\frac{1}{2}(x + 2)$$

$$2y - 14 = -x - 2$$

$$x + 2y - 12 = 0$$